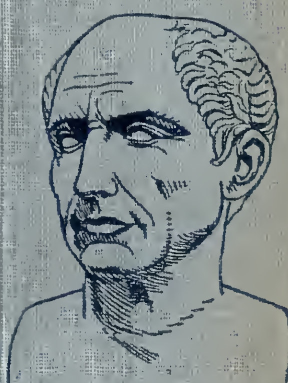
LONGMANS' ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

# CAESAR. BOOK I.



John Fletcher

Examination copies of the accompanying Book have just reached us from the Publishers. We have pleasure in sending one to your address.

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED

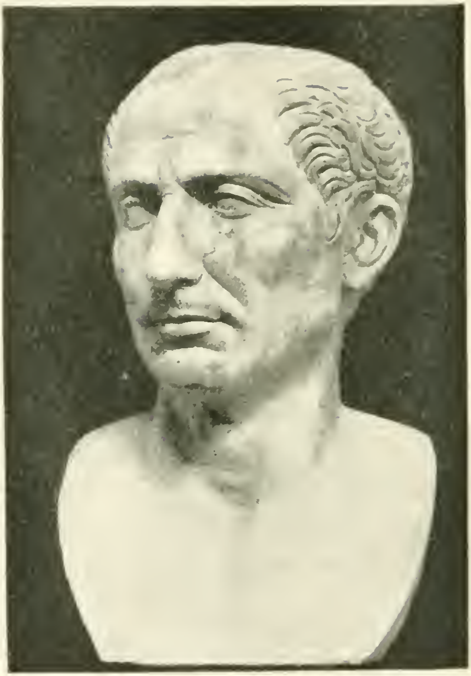
9 Front St. West, TORONTO

John Hatcher

*Longmans' Illustrated Classics*

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

## BOOK I.



GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

'He doth bestride the narrow world
Like a Colossus'

SHAKESPEARE: *Julius Caesar*, Act i sc. 2

*Longmans' Illustrated Classics*

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

## BOOK I.

WITH NOTES, INTRODUCTION, AND VOCABULARY

BY

J. W. BARTRAM, M.A.

SOMETIME SCHOLAR OF ST PETER'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
LATE ASSISTANT MASTER AT QUEEN ELIZABETH'S GRAMMAR SCHOOL
GAINSBOROUGH



DENARIUS 44 B.C.
(1) HEAD OF CAESAR (2) VENUS WITH VICTORY



LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK AND BOMBAY
1899

# CONTENTS

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.



# LIST OF MAPS.




The Publishers desire to acknowledge their indebtedness to the following for permission to reproduce maps and illustrations from their works:—

J. H. Merryweather, M.A., and the Rev. C. C. Tancock, M.A., for the use of plans from their edition of Caesar, Book I.; W. W. How, M.A., and H. D. Leigh, M.A., for illustrations from their 'History of Rome to the Death of Caesar'; and to Messrs. Weidmann, of Berlin, for illustrations from Guhl and Koner's 'Leben der Griechen und Römer,' sixth German edition.


N.B.—In *references* to the Text, 39, l. 18 means Chapter 39, line 18. Another passage in the same chapter is referred to thus, l. 27.

# INTRODUCTION

## I. LIFE OF IULIUS CAESAR

1. Gaius Iulius Caesar, the future dictator, was born B.C.
in 102 B.C.,[1] of a noble and ancient[2] Roman family. His 102
boyhood was passed amid the struggles of two political parties, whose violence convulsed the Roman State. On one side was the party of the Senate, the aristocrats—the Optimates, as they styled themselves—who were striving to restrict to their own narrow circle the monopoly of power and privilege which they so shamelessly abused. Their great champion was the Dictator Lucius Cornelius Sulla.

2. In violent opposition to them were the Populares, the Radicals of the day, whose hero was the great soldier Gaius Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage. To this party the young Caesar attached himself from the first, and by their help was able eventually to overthrow the dominant oligarchy and make himself virtual first Emperor of Rome.

3. Caesar's first office was that of **Flamen Dialis**, or
Priest of Jupiter, conferred on him in 87 B.C. by his uncle 87
Marius just before his brief seventh and last consulship.
In 83 B.C. his connection with the democratic party was 83
drawn still closer by his **marriage with Cornelia**, daughter of the popular leader, Lucius Cornelius Cinna.

4. In 83 B.C. the terrible Sulla returned from the East, and liberty was at the mercy of his victorious legions. His savage proscriptions showed the spirit in which the aristocrats intended to use their victory. It was not long before

[1] The date for which Mommsen ingeniously argues; the commonly accepted year is 100 B.C.

[2] The Caesars belonged to the Gens Iulia, which professed to trace its descent through Iulus to Venus. Hence the image of the goddess on the reverse of the Denarius given on the title-page.

B.C. 80–78 Caesar in Asia. Caesar incurred the dictator's displeasure. Bidden to divorce Cornelia, he fearlessly refused. Rome was no longer safe for him, and Caesar fled to Asia Minor, there to undergo his apprenticeship in war. At the capture of
79 Mitylene in 79 B.C., during the second Mithradatic War, he greatly distinguished himself, winning the coveted Corona Civica (the Victoria Cross of antiquity) for saving the life of a fellow-soldier; against the pirates, too, then the terror of the seas, he did good service.



A head crowned with a **Corona Civica**: the chaplet of oak leaves awarded to soldiers who saved a comrade's life in battle.

5. Meanwhile Sulla had died, in 78 B.C.,
78 and Caesar could safely return to Rome. Before long he still further ingratiated himself with the people by prosecuting, in
77 77 B.C., the aristocrat Dolabella, a creature of Sulla, for extortion during his government of Macedonia. The accused was acquitted; but Caesar won fame as a speaker, and to perfect himself in oratory, then as now a potent weapon in political life, he went to
76 Rhodes to study under the great rhetorician Apollonius Molo.
76–74 Caesar at Rhodes. On his way thither he was seized by pirates and held to ransom. The first use he made of his recovered liberty was to collect a fleet of warships and destroy the whole band.

6. On his return to Rome after a two years' absence at
74 Rhodes Caesar was elected **Military Tribune** in 74 B.C., probably in acknowledgment of the skill and energy with which, as a volunteer, he had held Caria for Rome during
68 the third Mithradatic War. In 68 B.C. he was made **Quaestor**, and was now fairly started on his career of office. It was at this time that he still further increased his popularity by introducing the images of Marius into the funeral procession of his aunt Iulia, and thus rehabilitating his memory.

68, 67 7. Cornelia, the mother of his only child, Iulia, died in 68 B.C., and next year Caesar married Pompey's cousin **Pompeia**, thus securing that great man's invaluable support.
68 He had been despatched in 68 B.C. as Quaestor to Spain, where he did good service in consolidating Pompey's work there and putting the finances of the country on a sound footing.

67 8. Caesar returned to Rome in 67 B.C., on the expiry of

his term of office as Quaestor, and soon afterwards was B.C.
passed the **Lex Gabinia**, by which Pompey was appointed High Admiral with extraordinary powers to suppress the pirates who swarmed in the Mediterranean. The mission was brilliantly accomplished, and in 66 B.C. Pompey, by the 66
**Lex Manilia**, was once more invested with exceptional authority to conduct the war against Mithradates. These two laws, which both received Caesar's hearty support, were in reality temporary suspensions of the constitution, and helped to pave the way for the coming Empire.

Meanwhile Caesar was still rising in popular favour, and in 65 B.C. was elected **Curule Aedile**. Although already 65
deeply in debt, he won redoubled popularity by the splendid extravagance of his shows and entertainments.

9. In 63 B.C. the **Pontifex Maximus** died. The right of 63
election to this office had been lately restored to the Popular Assembly by the action of the tribune T. Labienus, and, though the aristocrats strained every nerve to prevent it, Caesar secured his election and, sceptic though he was, became the head of the State religion of Rome. This was the year of Cicero's consulship and of Catiline's conspiracy. His enemies accused Caesar of complicity. It is impossible now to prove or disprove the charges, but though he did not aid and abet the conspirators the astute Caesar was probably privy to their designs and ready to profit by their success.

10. The **Praetorship** was Caesar's next office. It was 62
now 62 B.C., and Pompey was about to return from the East. A proposal to give him a command in Italy was warmly supported by the Praetor. But the Senate dreaded his return, and revenged itself by suspending the Praetor and forcibly closing his courts. The suspension, however, only added to Caesar's popularity, and when the mob threatened to answer force by force the Senate gave way and Caesar was restored. Another event of the year was the profanation of the mysteries of the Bona Dea by the dissolute young noble P. Clodius, who intruded into Caesar's pontifical palace, where they were being celebrated by Pompeia. This led to the divorce of Pompeia.

11. The following year, 61 B.C., saw Caesar in Further 61
Spain as **Propraetor**. Here he put down the last flickerings of revolt and organised the country. But on his return to

B.C. Rome in 60 B.C. he was confronted with a difficulty. He
60 had asked for a triumph for his victories in Spain, and the law required that a candidate for a triumph should remain outside the City. He was also anxious to stand for the Consulship: to secure election he must appear in person in the City. One or other object had to be surrendered. Caesar preferred ambition to vanity, and in due course was elected **Consul**, much to the dismay of the Senate.

12. By this time Caesar, the favourite of the people, had joined Pompey, the favourite of the army. He now also won over Crassus, the great millionaire. Thus the three great powers—the people, the army, and capital—were combined in the coalition known to history as the **First Triumvirate.**

59 13. **Caesar's Consulship** in 59 B.C. was a memorable one. His colleague Bibulus, the nominee of the Senate, was a nonentity, and the opposition of the aristocrats soon collapsed. The reformer thus had a free hand, and one of his first acts was to order the publication of the Acta Diurna, or Daily Journal of the House. The proceedings of the Senate were thus made public. A new agrarian law was forced through, and a Land Commission appointed to superintend its execution. It was a moderate measure, and spared existing interests. It provided lands for Pompey's veterans, and tried to check the dwindling of the free agricultural population of Italy. Caesar used his consulship to reform, not to revolutionise, and his salutary Leges Iuliae were calculated, if enforced, to heal some of the worst disorders of the State.

14. At the end of his year of office Caesar was to be **Proconsul** of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with command of three legions for five years. These powers were bestowed by a Lex Vatinia brought before the Popular Assembly. The Senate voluntarily added Transalpine Gaul and a fourth legion. Possibly they hoped and believed that Caesar would never emerge triumphant over the danger that was threatening in that quarter. During this year Caesar married his third and last wife, Calpurnia, and the marriage of Pompey to Caesar's only child, Iulia, cemented the union of these two powerful interests still further.

15. Never had Roman Proconsul more formidable
58 dangers to face than Caesar early in 58 B.C. The Gauls

themselves, indeed, were by this time a sadly degenerate B.C. nation. Contact with Roman civilisation had, except among the remote Belgae, undermined that ancient prowess which had enabled the Celts to sack Rome and make Allia (390 B.C.) 390 a name of terror. They were also disunited. Among all the important tribes of Central Gaul (Gallia Celtica) the kingship had disappeared, and the supreme power was in the hands of a few military nobles with hordes of armed retainers, like the English barons in Stephen's reign. Rival leagues were formed among the tribes which struggled for the hegemony and even within the tribe—nay, almost in each household—there were parties. Thus we find Divitiacus, the Aeduan, a keen partisan of Rome, and his brother Dumnorix a champion of Gallic independence. Everywhere some favoured Rome, others remembered with regret the past glories of Gaul and longed for independence; others even adopted the fatal plan of calling in the Germans to help them—a policy which, but for Caesar's arrival, would have had the same disastrous result as Vortigern's appeal to the Saxons under Hengist and Horsa.

16. The real danger that threatened lay not within but beyond Gaul, and was of twofold character. East of Genava, the extreme limit of the Roman Province, dwelt the Helvetii, a warlike Celtic people. Finding their mountainous home too narrow for their growing numbers and ambition, and possibly feeling the encroachments of restless German tribes behind them, they had resolved to migrate in a body to a new home in the West of Gaul. A new and formidable element would thus be introduced into Gaul itself, and as fierce German tribes from the north would undoubtedly hasten to occupy the deserted homes of the Helvetii, a fresh danger would threaten the Province on the East.

17. The other danger threatened simultaneously from the North. In the old days, before the Gauls had become a declining nation, they used to make raids and conquests across the Rhine; now, hordes of Germans were crossing the Rhine into Gaul, and, as the sad condition of the Aedui and Sequani described in chapter 31 of the First Book of the *Gallic War* shows, practically had all Gaul north of the Roman Province at their mercy.

18. This twofold peril Caesar instantly resolved to face, and the campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus

B.C. recorded in this Book show with what conspicuous success
he carried out his intention.

58–51 19. Eight years were spent in thoroughly reducing and
Gallic organising Gaul as a Roman possession. The campaign of
Wars 57 B.C. was against the warlike and uncivilised Belgae of
57 the North, and in his conflict with the Nervii, the bravest
tribe in the confederacy, Caesar came as near disaster as
ever he did in his life. In the end the Belgae were forced
to submit, and the Aduatici, a German tribe who sided with
them, were almost exterminated.

20. In consequence of the state of politics at Rome,
56 Caesar early in 56 B.C. met his colleagues Pompey and
Crassus in conference at Luca. There the irresistible three
arranged the future course of events. Pompey and Crassus
55 were to be Consuls for 55 B.C. Pompey was then to have
Spain for five years, and Crassus Syria. Caesar was to
have Gaul for five additional years, and then was to be
Consul without the necessity of presenting himself at Rome
for election. An alarming revolt of the Veneti, a maritime
tribe dwelling about Quiberon, recalled Caesar to his province,
and was only suppressed after a fleet had been improvised,
and the rebels crushed on their own element.

55 21. In 55 B.C. some German tribes who had invaded
Gaul were annihilated by Caesar, who by a great engineering
feat built a bridge across the Rhine merely to show the
Roman power. Later in the year he made his brief first
expedition into Britain.

54 22. Next year, 54 B.C., came the longer expedition into
Britain, which, however, led to no permanent conquest of
the country. During the winter of this year the Gauls
formed a great conspiracy to destroy in detail the legions
when scattered in their winter quarters. The Eburones
first revolted; Sabinus and Cotta and their force were cut
to pieces. Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, was
besieged, and relieved by Caesar only in the nick of time.
The threatened general rising of Gaul was finally crushed
54, 53 by the energy of Caesar (54, 53 B.C.).

54 23. During 54 B.C. Caesar's mother Aurelia, a remarkable
woman of great influence, died, and also his daughter Iulia,
53 Pompey's wife, and in 53 B.C. Crassus was defeated and
slain in Parthia. Thus the Coalition was broken up, and
Caesar and Pompey were left face to face to develop their

rivalries, unrestrained by the moderating influence of Iulia B.C.
and Aurelia. At last, in 52 B.C., Pompey became sole 52
Consul and definitely joined the Optimates.

24. The year 52 B.C. was memorable for a general insur- 52
rection of Gaul under Vercingetorix the Arvernian, the only man of genius produced by Gaul all through the war. Caesar was away in Italy at the time of the outbreak, but by a daring rush through disaffected country he rejoined his army in North Gaul. The Gauls waged a desperate guerilla warfare. Caesar stormed Avaricum, the chief town of the Bituriges, but was compelled to raise the siege of Gergovia, his only failure where present in person. Immediately the insurrection blazed with fury all over Gaul, and even the Aedui wavered in their allegiance. But Caesar captured Alesia by one of the most remarkable feats in military history, the
heroic Vercingetorix surrendered, and by 51 B.C. the revolt 51
was crushed. Thus ended the single spasmodic attempt of the Celts at a united effort to throw off the Roman yoke. It failed, and henceforth the nation was content to submit, and even through the Civil War resisted the temptation of rising to reassert its independence. The Gauls were permanently reconciled to subjection by the wise and merciful treatment they experienced at the hands of their great enemy, and nothing remained for Caesar but to organise his newly acquired province. Meanwhile his enemies at Rome were
meditating his recall, 50 B.C. 50

25. Caesar's extended command was due to expire in
49 B.C. And now came the great crisis which really decided 49
what form the government of Rome (that is, of the civilised world) should assume for the next five centuries.

26. The consulship for 48 B.C. had been promised to 48
Caesar: the nobles at Rome, however, resolved that he should never return as Consul. By this time Pompey had definitely ranked himself on their side, and, encouraged by his co-operation, the Senate passed a resolution that Caesar's command should expire at once, instead of at the due period. On pain of being declared an enemy of the State, Caesar was to disband his army and return as a private citizen.
The Consuls for 49 B.C. were given absolute power, and 49
Pompey was placed in command of the levies being raised in Italy.

27. Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul at the time, and the

B.C. Tribunes and other supporters of Caesar at once fled to his camp. Though his most able and trusted officer, Labienus, went over to the Senatorial side, the rest of the army were faithful to their great leader. Quick as ever to act, Caesar at once crossed the little stream of Rubicon, which was the frontier of his province, and advanced to Ariminum.

28. This was the **beginning of the Civil War**, for a provincial governor was absolutely forbidden to leave his province without orders from the Senate. The Senatorial party, with Pompey and the Consuls at their head, instantly fled, and making their way to Brundisium crossed to Dyrrachium. After receiving the surrender of Corfinium, where alone resistance was offered, Caesar, hoping to be spared a long civil war, followed them as far as Brundisium, but finding himself powerless to act without a fleet, returned to Rome.

29. Sicily and Sardinia, on which his corn supplies depended, were recovered for Caesar; he then turned his attention to Spain, which was held by Pompey's lieutenants, Afranius and Petreius, with 30,000 legionaries. Though Gaul was faithful, Massilia closed its gates to him as he passed, and he left it to be blockaded by Decimus Brutus.

30. A victory at **Ilerda** soon gave him Spain, and he returned just in time to receive the capitulation of Massilia. During his absence from the capital Caesar had been made Dictator, but he contented himself with securing the Consul-
48 ship for 48 B.C., and abdicated after eleven days.

48 31. Early in January 48 B.C. Caesar went down to Brundisium and crossed to near **Dyrrachium**, where Pompey's army lay. After a repulse at this place which nearly led to disaster, he marched to **Pharsalia**, in the plain of Thessaly, and inflicted a crushing defeat on the enemy. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered. Before long Caesar, who in the meantime had been appointed Dictator in his absence, arrived in **Alexandria**, where he was
47 detained till early in 47 B.C. by the futile hostility of the Egyptians. On his way home through Syria he overthrew, at **Ziela**, Pharnaces, King of Upper Armenia, a son of Mithradates, who had raised the standard of revolt. This complete and sudden victory was the occasion of the famous 'Veni, vidi, vici' despatch.

32. But not yet was there to be peace. Once more the B.C.
Senate rallied their forces, this time in Africa, only to be
crushed by Caesar at **Thapsus** near Carthage, in 46 B.C. One 46
last campaign in Spain yet remained to be fought, and the
final hard-won victory at **Munda**, in 45 B.C., concluded the 45
Civil War.

33. Caesar was, of course, now supreme. Already on his
return from Thapsus, in 46 B.C., he had been made Dictator, 46
first for ten years, and then for life, and Inspector of Public
Morals. He at once applied his powers to useful ends. For
example, the Calendar, which was so much in error that the
official date was sixty-seven days in advance of the real time,
was reformed. On his return from Munda, late in 45 B.C., the 45
reforms were resumed. The Senate was purged of unworthy
members and its numbers increased; the administration of
the law in the courts was purified and a commission was
appointed to codify the laws; vast engineering schemes for
the public benefit were projected, and a final campaign
against the Parthians planned to round off the Empire in
the East.

34. On Caesar himself honours were showered, often to his infinite disgust. He was called Pater Patriae, and the title Imperator,[1] with which a victorious army was wont to greet its general on the field of battle, prefixed permanently to his name; the month of July was named after him (his birthday fell on July 12); he was even deified and a royal crown was offered him, which he refused.[2]

35. All this, however, was mere flattery, designed possibly
to excite popular odium and make its object ridiculous. The
animosity of the defeated aristocrats had survived the Civil
War and was not mollified even by Caesar's generosity and
tact. Some sixty Senators entered into a conspiracy to slay
the Dictator, and as Caesar was personally one of the most
fearless and unsuspicious of men they were able to effect
their purpose. Caesar fell in the Senate House pierced with
three-and-twenty wounds on March 15, 44 B.C. just as he 44

[1] On the obverse of the Denarius on the title-page we have IMPER. CAESAR.

[2] The only one of the honours conferred by the Senate which Caesar received with pleasure was the right to wear a golden bay-wreath. It served to conceal his baldness, and is shown on the obverse of the Denarius on the title-page.

B.C. was about to undertake a final campaign in the east to avenge Crassus.

36. The great soldier and statesman was dead, slain by his malignant enemies, who vainly imagined that his death would restore to the Senate the old licence to misgovern the world. If we seek to estimate the qualities of Caesar as a soldier the first point that strikes us is the rapidity of his movements, the most remarkable instance of which is
52 perhaps, his action in 52 B.C. when all Gaul burst into revolt under Vercingetorix. Caesar's absence in Italy was one of the main factors on which the Gauls relied, but before they realised it he had rushed through Gaul and was with his army in the north. No less noteworthy were the rapidity with which he came to a decision, and the soundness of his judgment thus rapidly formed. With the intuition of genius he seemed to know what was possible, and what was not, and what means were best adapted to secure the end in view. Therefore we only find two instances—Gergovia and Dyrrachium—where he failed, and even then his repulse was by his skilful tactics converted into speedy and decisive victory. Like all great leaders, Caesar was a keen observer of men's characters, both friends' and enemies', and turned them to account (e.g. *B. G.* iv. 13).

37. Personally, Caesar was one of the most fearless of men, and sometimes—for example, in the battle with the
57 Nervii, in 57 B.C.—wrested victory from disaster by his own desperate valour. We may note, too, his care for his men's lives and health, and can understand something of the personal devotion with which he was regarded by them when we see with what delight he dwells on individual brave acts, such as the exploits of the heroic centurion P. Sextius Baculus, who is mentioned in Books ii., iii., vi. of the *Gallic War*, and in one place (*B. G.* v. 44) a whole chapter is devoted to a successful piece of daring by two centurions.

The personal influence of Caesar is strikingly exemplified on two occasions. At Vesontio (*B. G.* i. 41) a single speech of the commander dispels the panic and recalls the mutinous soldiers to their duty; and again, just before the Thapsus campaign, the legionaries mutinously refused to serve. Caesar confronted them unarmed. A single word sufficed to quell the mutiny. 'Quirites' (Citizens), he called

them, instead of the familiar 'Commilitones' (Comrades in arms), and the implied reproach recalled them to their allegiance.

38. As an orator Caesar surpassed, we are told by Cicero, those who had practised no other art, and in the opinion of the great critic Quintilian he would have been second only to Cicero if he had had leisure for the forum. Of Caesar's writings we have only seven books of Commentaries on the Gallic War, and three on the Civil War. The other books which have come down to us as Caesar's are either mere fragments, or of disputed authorship, or demonstrably by another hand. The Commentaries are a plain straightforward narrative of his campaigns. In their military brevity they are more like a general's despatch from the field than anything else, except that they are enriched by many interesting details on the geography, products, and people of the strange countries he visited. Cicero compares their style to an undraped statue: they were divested of all rhetorical ornament. The facts simply stand recorded without a trace of sentiment or passion. One of the objects of the author was to provide what he considered a fair and reliable account of the events recorded as materials for future historians to work up into a more polished literary form. Another was to present his motives in a proper light to posterity; but his immediate purpose was probably to furnish the Senate with a connected *résumé* of the action of their proconsul in Gaul.

Caesar was a shrewd and careful observer, and his trustworthiness as an historian is unimpeachable. His Commentaries have this unique point of interest, that they are the work of the man who above all others helped to make history. For Caesar it was who finally built up the Empire on the ruins of the Republic, and Caesar's conquest of Gaul staved off for some centuries the last fatal inroad of the Germanic tribes, and profoundly altered the future history and civilisation of Gaul and, through Gaul, of Western Europe.

The portrait of Caesar on the frontispiece is from the bust preserved in the National Museum at Naples, and represents him at the age of about forty—that is, about four years before the campaign against the Helvetii.

## II. CAESAR'S ARMY

39. Four hundred and fifty years before the birth of Caesar, in the reign of Servius Tullius (reigned 578–534 B.C.), Roman armies on the field of battle were drawn up in a **Phalanx**. The best armed warriors formed the front line, and they stood each man close to his neighbour, presenting a solid array of bristling pike and shield to the enemy. The mail-clad phalanx often carried the day by sheer weight, yet in course of time the defects of this formation came to be clearly seen. The solid line was immobile and unwieldy to handle; it could not adapt itself to hilly or difficult country, and when once the line was broken through defeat became irretrievable.

In course of time the army was remodelled, and the compact phalanx was broken up into the smaller divisions of cohort, maniple, and century. Tradition attributes the reform to Camillus (*floruit* 403–365 B.C.). A Roman force was now more mobile and adaptable, and a commander could strengthen more readily the weak parts in his array.

In Caesar's time the Celts and Germans still employed the phalanx, and in chapters 25 and 52 of Book I. of his *Gallic War* we find the two systems pitted against one another, with the inevitable result of victory for the more flexible formation.

40. Important changes in the constitution of the Roman army again occurred in the time of Caesar's uncle, C. Marius. There had long been a growing disinclination to service, and this, coupled with the steady dwindling of the sturdy yeomen of Italy and the strain of the Cimbrian wars (113–101 B.C.), compelled Marius to enrol the **proletarii** and **capite censi**, the lowest strata of society, in the legions. These men had no property, and depended entirely on their pay. They therefore became a professional soldiery, and the old citizen soldiers, who when the campaign was over used to go back to their plough or their trade, became extinct. This change in the *personnel* of the army is an important factor among the causes which contributed to the downfall of the Republic. The instrument was forged ready for Caesar's hand.

41. Caesar's army in 58 B.C. consisted of six brigades or **legions**. The 7th, 8th and 9th legions he found in winter-quarters at Aquileia in Cisalpine Gaul; a fourth, the 10th,

was stationed in Transalpine Gaul. These were his four veteran legions (*B. G.* i. 24, l. 6). Two new ones, the 11th and 12th, he raised in Cisalpine Gaul before his first campaign.

42. The normal strength of one of Caesar's legions cannot be stated exactly. It was probably between 5,000 and 6,000 men. Legions only 3,500 strong are mentioned (*B. G.* v. 49), but that was after the ranks had been thinned by casualties and disease. The six legions, then, may be reckoned as from 30,000 to 35,000 men. These were Roman citizens and the backbone of his army.

43. In addition to this infantry force he had 4,000 cavalry (*B. G.* i. 15, l. 3) raised in the Roman Province or supplied by the Aeduans. These were all Gauls, and Caesar's action in dismounting them and taking instead his faithful fighting tenth to the conference with Ariovistus (*B. G.* i. 42, l. 18), and the treachery of Dumnorix, who commanded the Aeduan contingent (*B. G.* i. 18, l. 31), show how little trustworthy they were.

44. A strong force of auxiliaries (**auxilia**) also accompanied his army. Being generally posted on the wings (**alae**) on the battlefield they are sometimes called **alarii** (*B. G.* i. 51, l. 3). These troops were not Romans, but drawn



A slinger, **funditor.**



An archer, **sagittarius.**

Caesar had such light-armed auxiliaries, **levis armaturae pedites,** in his army. They wear the tunica but no lorica.

The best bowmen came from Crete (*B. G.* iii. 7), and the best slingers from the Balearic Isles.

from the fighting races all over the empire, and preserved their native equipments and modes of warfare. Among Caesar's auxilia are found javelin-men (**iaculatores**); slingers (**funditores**), from the Balearic Isles; and Cretan bowmen

(**sagittarii**): all these were comprised under the general title of **levis armaturae pedites**, light-armed infantry.

45. A number of **tormenta**, the ancient equivalent for artillery, comprising engines, such as **catapultae** and **ballistae**, for hurling stones, and battering-rams (**arietes**) and other siege appliances, completed the equipment of Caesar's army. He had no special corps of sappers and miners, but all his legionaries were splendid engineers and smiths, and may be truly said to have won their victories as much with the spade as with the sword.

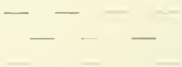
46. Each legion contained ten battalions (**cohortes**), each cohort three companies (**manipuli**), each maniple two centuries (**legio : cohors : manipulus : centuria = ordo**).

The cavalry (**equitatus**) was divided into **alae**, or regiments of 300 or more troopers, the ala into ten **turmae** or squadrons, and the turma into three **decuriae**.

The auxiliary troops were divided into cohorts.

47. On the field of battle the legion was generally drawn up in three lines (**acies triplex**).

The front line consisted of four cohorts, with spaces between them. At a distance to the rear stood three cohorts behind the spaces in the first line. At a like distance stood the third line of three cohorts. This formation is shown by the diagram:



The men stood 10 deep, so that the front of a cohort contained from 50 to 60 men if the legion had its full complement. The centre of the line was the **acies media**; the right and left wings were the **cornu dextrum** and **sinistrum** respectively.

The flank (**latus**) was the weakest point in the whole formation, especially the right flank, called **latus apertum** (*B. G.* i. 25, l. 23), because the shield (**scutum**) was held on the left arm, and the right side was comparatively unprotected.

48. This broad formation of the acies was obviously unsuitable for the marching-order (**agmen**).

If the men forming the triplex acies turn right or left we have an agmen. The cohort now has a front of ten, and is fifty deep, instead of a front of fifty and a depth of ten.

The triple line of the acies would thus form a triple marching column, but as a rule the cohorts were formed into single column; such details naturally varied according to the nature of the ground, and the proximity or otherwise of the enemy.

Each legion on the march was followed by its own heavy baggage (**impedimenta**), except that a legion brought up the rear.

49. When the enemy was close at hand, a formation called the **agmen quadratum** was often adopted; it was a kind of moving hollow square with the baggage in the centre.

A small force attacked by a superior enemy formed an **orbis,** or circle. In *B. G.* iv. 37, a force of 300 Romans thus hold their ground against a strong force of Morini, till relieved by Caesar.

These regular fighting and marching formations were naturally subject to variations, especially at the hands of able commanders like Caesar, to meet special circumstances. Sometimes, for example, we have a duplex instead of a triplex acies, and in *B. G.* i. 25, l. 29, in the battle against the Helvetii, while the first and second lines continue the fight in front, the third line wheels to the right and forms a second fighting front to meet a new phase in the engagement.

The centre of the army on the march was called **medium agmen**, the van **primum agmen**, the rear **novissimum agmen.**

50. The commander-in-chief was the **dux,** and might be hailed **imperator** by his victorious troops on the field of battle: he was assisted by a staff of lieutenant-generals, called **legati.**

These legati were appointed by the general often from among his political or private friends anxious to share his patronage. They were not attached to any particular legion, but were at the general's disposal for any responsible work (*cf.* Labienus in *B. G.* i. 21; and the legati attached to each legion in *B. G.* i. 52). When, in the absence of the general, a legate had an independent command, he was **legatus pro praetore**, *i.e.* a legate with praetor's powers.

51. The regular officers of the legions were the six **tribuni militum,** who seem to have commanded each for two months in turn. They were appointed partly by election in the Popular Assembly (*e.g.* Caesar in 74 B.C.), and partly by the general.

The legati and tribuni militum were too often mere carpet-knights who only went on a campaign for a little mild excitement, and proved their incapacity when confronted by the stern realities of war, as we see in *B. G.* i. 39, on the occasion of the panic at Vesontio.

52. The **centuriones** were non-commissioned officers, like our sergeants. There were sixty in the legion, one to each century, and, being appointed by the military tribunes from among the bravest soldiers, were the salt of the army. They took precedence according to the number of their ordo (centuria). The following diagram of the sixty centuries of a legion shows the order of precedence.

| Cohort | 1st | | 2nd | | 3rd | | 4th | | 5th | | 6th | | 7th | | 8th | | 9th | | 10th | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | | ordo | |
| Maniples | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior | prior | posterior |
| 1. pilani (triarii) | 1 | 31 | 2 | 32 | 3 | 33 | 4 | 34 | 5 | 35 | 6 | 36 | 7 | 37 | 8 | 38 | 9 | 39 | 10 | 40 |
| 2. principes | 11 | 41 | 12 | 42 | 13 | 43 | 14 | 44 | 15 | 45 | 16 | 46 | 17 | 47 | 18 | 48 | 19 | 19 | 20 | 50 |
| 3. hastati | 21 | 51 | 22 | 52 | 23 | 53 | 24 | 54 | 25 | 55 | 26 | 56 | 27 | 57 | 28 | 58 | 29 | 59 | 30 | 60 |

A soldier promoted from the ranks to be sixtieth centurion in the legion, would pass through the ordines posteriores of the hastati, principes, and pilani successively, and similarly through the ordines priores, before he became primipilus.[1]

The senior centurion of each cohort commanded that cohort.

The senior centurion of the first maniple (pilani) of the first cohort had a special post of honour as **primipilus** and had the **aquila**, or great standard of the legion, and its bearer (**aquilifer**) under his protection.

The primorum ordinum centuriones in *B. G.* i. 41, l. 7, are the senior centurions of each cohort, ten to each legion; these had a seat at the Council of War (**consilium**) beside the superior officers.

[1] This account of the course of promotion of Centurions, which is the one favoured by Kraner, is in itself more probable than any scheme which represents the Centurion as rising from the sixth to the first century in each cohort in succession.

53. Besides his staff of five legati Caesar had, in 58 B.C., one Quaestor (*B. G.* i. 52, l. 2). The Quaestor was not properly a combatant, but a civil officer, though we sometimes find one engaged in a military capacity. Twenty Quaestors were elected every year at Rome, the majority of whom were distributed by lot or the will of the Senate among the provincial governors. They were the provincial treasurers and, so far as their connection with the army went, looked after the pay and stores, like our paymasters and quartermasters-general.



An **aquilifer** from Trajan's Column. These and all standard-bearers, **signiferi**, are always represented as wearing the head and skin of some wild beast over their head and back.

54. The cavalry was commanded by a **Praefectus equitum,** who in Caesar's army was P. Crassus, the younger son of the Triumvir. Caesar describes him (*B. G.* i. 52, l. 16) as 'qui equitatui praeerat.' This officer, called also—perhaps in later times —'praefectus alae,' was a Roman. The commanders of the alae or cavalry regiments were praefecti also, and might be natives, as we see from the case of Dumnorix (*B. G.* i. 18, l. 32).

The auxiliary troops were also commanded by **praefecti,** who corresponded in rank and authority to the tribuni militum in the legions, with whom they are often coupled (*B. G.* i. 39, l. 16; iii. 7).

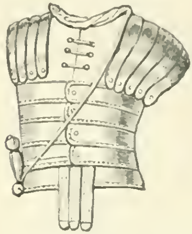
In the cavalry each decuria was commanded by a **decurio** (*B. G.* i. 23, l. 11); the turma was commanded by the senior of its three decuriones.

55. The military dress of the Romans consisted of:—

(i.) The **tunica,** a close-fitting tunic with very short sleeves, just covering the shoulders and reaching to about the knees.

(ii.) A **lorica,** or cuirass, the most common form of which for private soldiers (gregarii milites) was the *lorica segmentata*, fashioned of metal plates to protect the upper part of chest and back, and strips of steel (laminae) to protect the lower part of chest and back and shoulders. More costly forms of cuirass were worn by selected troops and officers, and those of generals and emperors were often of beautiful embossed work.

(iii.) The **sagum**, or short military cloak, a square or rectangular piece of shaggy cloth fastened over the right

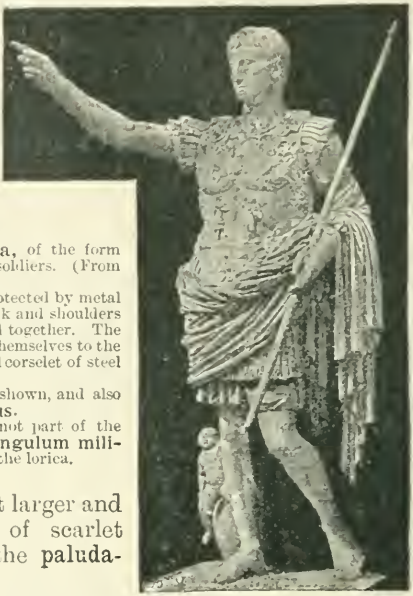


A cuirass, **lorica segmentata**, of the form most usually found on legionary soldiers. (From Trajan's Column.)

The upper chest and back are protected by metal plates, and the lower chest and back and shoulders by strips (laminae) of steel riveted together. The strips were more flexible, to adapt themselves to the movements of the body, than a solid corselet of steel would have been.

The **balteus**, or sword-belt, is shown, and also the **capulus** or hilt of the **gladius**.

The straps hanging down are not part of the lorica but of the soldier's belt, **cingulum militiae**, which is mostly covered by the lorica.



A **marble statue of Augustus** found in the Villa of Livia. The Emperor is in full general's costume, with a lorica of elaborately embossed work.

The statue is very interesting both for its intrinsic beauty and because it shows traces of polychromy.

The **tunica** was coloured crimson, the **paludamentum** purple, the pleated extensions of the **lorica** yellow. Also traces of colour (blue and dull yellow) are visible in the fine details of the embossed work on the breast.

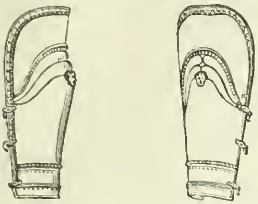
shoulder. A similar but larger and more handsome cloak of scarlet worn by generals was the **paludamentum**.

(iv.) **Ocreae**, leggings or greaves, protecting the shins from ankle to knee. Roman legionaries usually wore only a right greave, for the right leg was advanced when they came to close quarters with the gladius. Under the Empire greaves were discarded, and leather or woollen socks with leather thongs twisted round foot and ankle employed instead.

(v.) **Caligae**, military shoes with thick hob-nailed soles.

(vi.) A helmet of metal or leather (**cassis** and **galea** respectively; generally the cassis was used). The private soldier's casque was either devoid of ornament or had merely a plain metal knob on the top. Centurions and superior

officers had horsehair or feather plumes (**cristae**). Probably the 'Gallic accoutrements' (*insignibus* in *B. G.* i. 22, l. 7) refer

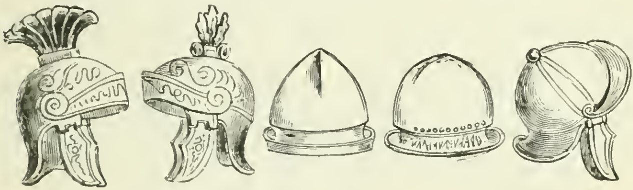


A pair of greaves, **ocreae,** from bronze originals found at Pompeii. The legionary only wore one ocrea, on the right leg, which was advanced in using the gladius. The buckles with which they were fastened are visible.



A **caliga** or heavy hob-nailed military shoe worn by Roman soldiers. It was secured by a strap twisted round the ankle. (From Trajan's Arch.)

to the plumes in the officers' helmets. *Cf.* Caesar's 'Alauda' legion of Gauls, named the 'lark' from just such a badge.



1 2 3 4 5

**Roman helmets, cassides,** from the Arch of Constantine.

1 and 2 are helmets of centurions or superior officers, adorned with plumes, **cristae,** and artistic work.

3 and 4 are early Etruscan helmets from tombs.

5 the helmet of a private (gregarius miles).

56. The shield of the legionary was the **scutum,** a rectangle measuring about 4 ft. by $2\frac{1}{2}$ ft. and curved to the form of nearly a half cylinder. It was made of boards covered with leather and bound top and bottom with iron. In the centre was a metal boss, or **umbo,** and round it various devices, such as wreaths, lightning, winged thunderbolts, and the like, by which different detachments could be distinguished.

57. A belt (**cingulum militiae**) worn round the waist and mostly covered by the lorica, and a **balteus** or baldrick passing over the left shoulder and supporting the gladius at the *right* hip completed the attire of the legionary.

Superior officers wore the distinctive **cinctorium** by which was suspended their sword on the *left* side.

58. The typical offensive weapon of the Roman legionary was the **pilum**, a heavy javelin about 6 feet 3 inches long. A barbed iron head of more than half the total length was riveted to a stout wooden shaft. But only one of the rivets was of iron ; the other was of brittle wood, and the iron itself, except the piercing point, was of soft temper. The result of these arrangements is seen in the battle with the Helvetii (*B. G.* i. 25, l. 9). When the pila pierced the shields of the Celtic phalanx, the soft iron head was bent and the enemy were unable to extricate themselves from the entanglement before the Romans were down on them with their gladii. Moreover, when once a pilum was discharged it was spoilt, and useless for the enemy to pick up and return.

The pilum was properly a missile, and not a thrusting spear. When Roman soldiers got within range of the enemy they discharged a volley of pila, and, before the enemy had time to recover, came up at the double and fought at close quarters with the gladius.

59. The **gladius**, or Spanish sword, was a short, straight, pointed, two-edged weapon, suitable for cutting or thrusting, and seems to have been adopted in the Roman armies after their experience of its efficiency at Cannae, in 216 B.C.



A legionary soldier in light marching order, **expeditus.** The lorica and scutum are the only accoutrements borne ; the sarcina is left to be transported along with the heavy baggage, **impedimenta,** of the army. (From Trajan's Column.)

60. The heavy baggage of an army (**impedimenta**) was transported on beasts of burden (**iumenta**) or in waggons (**carri**). It included all that the soldiers did not carry in their packs (**sarcinae**) tents, tormenta, &c.

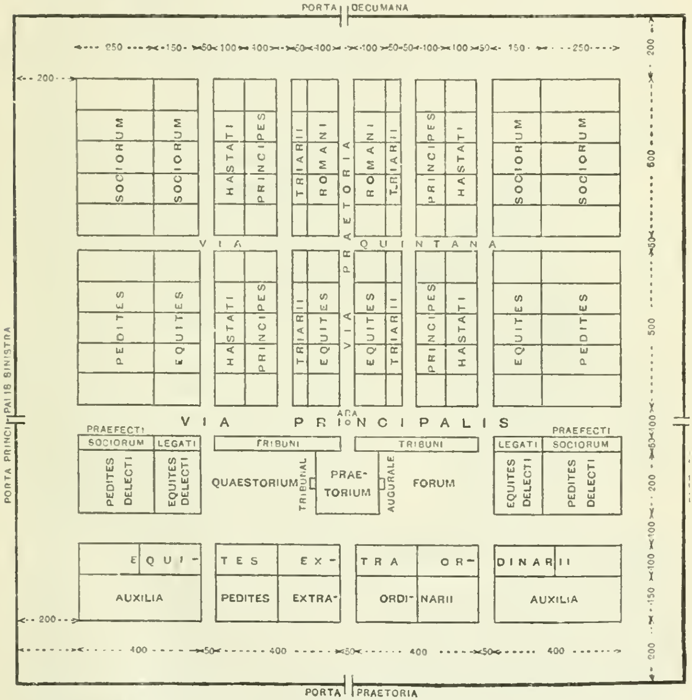
61. The **sarcina**, or soldier's pack, was tied to the top of a pole strapped to the back. This arrangement was invented by C. Marius, and men so loaded were nicknamed **muli Mariani**, or Marius's mules, because they carried their pack like a baggage mule. The pack contained weapons, clothes, stakes for palisading (**valli**), spade or other tool, cooking utensils, axe, saw, basket, corn rations

(**cibaria**), and weighed about half a hundredweight. When it came to fighting, the sarcinae were collected in one spot and guarded ('sarcinas conferre,' *B. G.* i. 24, l. 15).

When soldiers were marching with full kit—armour, helmet, and sarcina—they were **impediti**, 'cumbered.'

When armour and weapons were reduced to a minimum, and the sarcina left in camp, they were **expediti**, 'in light order,' and the more active men were often sent out so on some special service.

62. Wherever a Roman army halted, even for a single




**Plan of a Roman camp** for a consular army of two legions with cavalry and auxiliaries, about 18,000 troops in all.

night, they constructed a fortified camp (**castra**). It was nearly always square. Size, strength, and other details, of

course, varied according to circumstances; but the plan of a camp for a consular army of two legions, given on p. 21, gives a clear idea of its general character.

Starting from the site of the general's quarters (**Praetorium**) as point of intersection of two lines at right angles to each other (the cardo maximus and decumanus maximus), a square was measured out as a site for the camp.

A deep trench (**fossa**) was dug, and the earth excavated was thrown up inside to form a rampart (**agger**); the top of the rampart was protected by a palisade (**vallum**).

Each of the four sides had its gate. In the middle of the side facing the enemy was the **Porta Praetoria**; remote from the enemy was the **Porta Decumana**. The line joining these two gates was the decumanus maximus.

Along the line of the cardo maximus was a broad thoroughfare, the **Via Principalis**, at the ends of which were the **Porta Principalis Dextra** and **Sinistra**.

The Via Principalis divided the camp into two unequal portions, an upper and a lower.

63. The upper camp contained (i.) the general's quarters, **Praetorium**; (ii.) the **Quaestorium**, where the Quaestor kept his money and stores; (iii.) the camp **Forum**, an open space where the general addressed his men (**allocutio**), mounted on a tribunal (**suggestus**): here, too, sentence on offenders was passed, and punishment inflicted by the lictors, who stood by with axe and rods ready. In the same part of the camp, too, the legates and military tribunes had their quarters with some picked troops to guard them.



A **lictor**, from a bas-relief at Verona.

In his right hand is a rod, **virga**, with which he cleared the way for the magistrate whom he attended.

Over his left shoulder are the **fasces**, the bundle of rods and axe for scourging and executing criminals, and also as a symbol of the magistrate's authority.

Caesar, as Proconsul in Gaul, would have six or twelve lictors in attendance.

The figure shows extremely well the **sagum**, or military cloak, worn by a lictor attending a Provincial Governor.

In the lower camp was quartered the main body of the troops, legionaries, cavalry, and auxiliaries.

On the plan triarii, principes, hastati are mentioned. These were three classes of troops once serving in the legion and differing in age and equipment. But in Caesar's time the legionaries were uniformly equipped and armed, and there were no triarii, principes or hastati, as such; only the name survived, and only in connection with the precedence of the centurions as shown in § 52.

The lower camp was divided into two equal parts by a narrower road, the **Via Quintana**, running parallel to the via principalis. There were also minor thoroughfares between the rows of tents.

To guard against missiles, fire, and a sudden assault of the enemy, an **intervallum**, 200 feet wide, was kept clear within the agger.

The tents (**tabernacula**) were mostly made of skins stretched on poles and cords; one tent was allotted to a mess of ten men (**contubernium**). Of course, centurions and superior officers had more ample accommodation.

64. The camp was elaborately guarded by **custodes** (sentries) at the gates; **stationes** (outposts), guarding the approaches; and a guard (**excubiae**), as well as a special night-guard (**vigiles**), who were on duty for one of the four watches (**vigiliae**) into which the night, sunset to sunrise, was divided.

65. The camp in which troops were to spend the winter (**hiberna**: sc. castra) was constructed on the usual plan, except that, being intended for permanent occupation, it was made unusually strong for defence. Instead of being housed in tabernacula, the troops were snugly quartered in thatched huts (**casae stramenticiae**).

66. A **castellum** (diminutive of castrum) was a fort or redoubt held by a garrison (**praesidium**). A castellum was built whenever it was essential to hold a position. Caesar's famous bridge over the Rhine, for example, was held by a fort at either end (*B. G.* iv. 18). Defence works, too—such as the nineteen-mile-long line of wall and trench (**munitio**) described in *B. G.* i. 8—were defended by castella and praesidia at intervals, and a similar device was employed to guard frontiers against barbarians: for example, Agricola's and Hadrian's walls in our own country.

67. The great standard of the legion was, since the second consulship of Marius, in 104 B.C., a silver or gold

eagle (**aquila**) with outspread wings, surmounting a staff. The staff itself was unornamented except by a flag or **vexillum**. It was borne by the **aquilifer** of the legion, and was under the charge of the primipilus (see § 52). The *esprit de corps* that centred round the eagle is well exemplified by the aquilifer who, on Caesar's first expedition to Britain (*B. G.* iv. 25), leaped into the sea, and challenged the hesitating legionaries not to let their colours fall into the enemy's hands.

The general word for a military ensign is **signum**. The bearer of such a standard was a **signifer**. The various maniples had their signa, many of which are represented on p. 62.

The **vexillum** was merely a flag suspended from a cross-bar, which was mostly used to distinguish the turmae of cavalry, and was also used by small detachments of men sent on special service.

A red vexillum hoisted on the general's tent was the usual signal for battle or marching.

68. When a stronghold of the enemy had to be taken an attempt was made to take it by assault (**oppugnatio repentina**), if there was any prospect of success; a successful assault was called **expugnatio**. If the place was too strong to be stormed, but ill-provisioned, the blockade (**obsidio**) was tried. Lines of circumvallation were drawn round the town, which, if the operations were successful, was eventually taken by a breach being effected in the walls, or the garrison being starved into surrender. If the town was both strong and well provided, formal siege (**oppugnatio**) was laid.

Among the devices employed by a besieging force was the **agger**, a mound raised near the hostile wall, equalling it in height, and often surmounted with towers. Movable towers (**turres ambulatoriae**) were also rolled up, from the stories (**tabulata**) of which missiles could be discharged into the town or drawbridges let down on to the wall. In the *Alexandrian War*, ii. 5, such a tower with ten stories is mentioned.

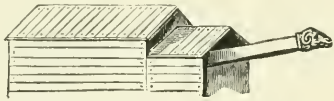
To breach the walls a battering-ram (**aries**) was employed. This was a huge beam of timber with a heavy metal ram's head at the end. **Vineae**, or wooden sheds sixteen feet long and eight feet high, with penthouse roof, were gradually

moved up to the wall, or the besiegers formed a **testudo** with their shields. The rear men of a small scaling party stooped,



A **testudo**, or tortoise, from the Column of Antoninus.
Among the missiles of the defenders of the German stronghold depicted we can distinguish a piece of rock, a pot of molten lead and burning torches.

and the front men stood and pressed their shields together to form a sloping roof. Under the shelter of vinea or testudo men undermined the wall or battered it. The **cuniculus** was a mine to effect an entrance into a town by burrowing under the wall. **Musculi** were a larger kind of vinea, and **plutei** were mantlets under cover of which storming parties advanced close up to the wall.



An **aries**, or battering-ram : from the Arch of Septimius Severus. The ram was a huge beam armed with a heavy metal ram's head. The ram represented is in a movable shed.

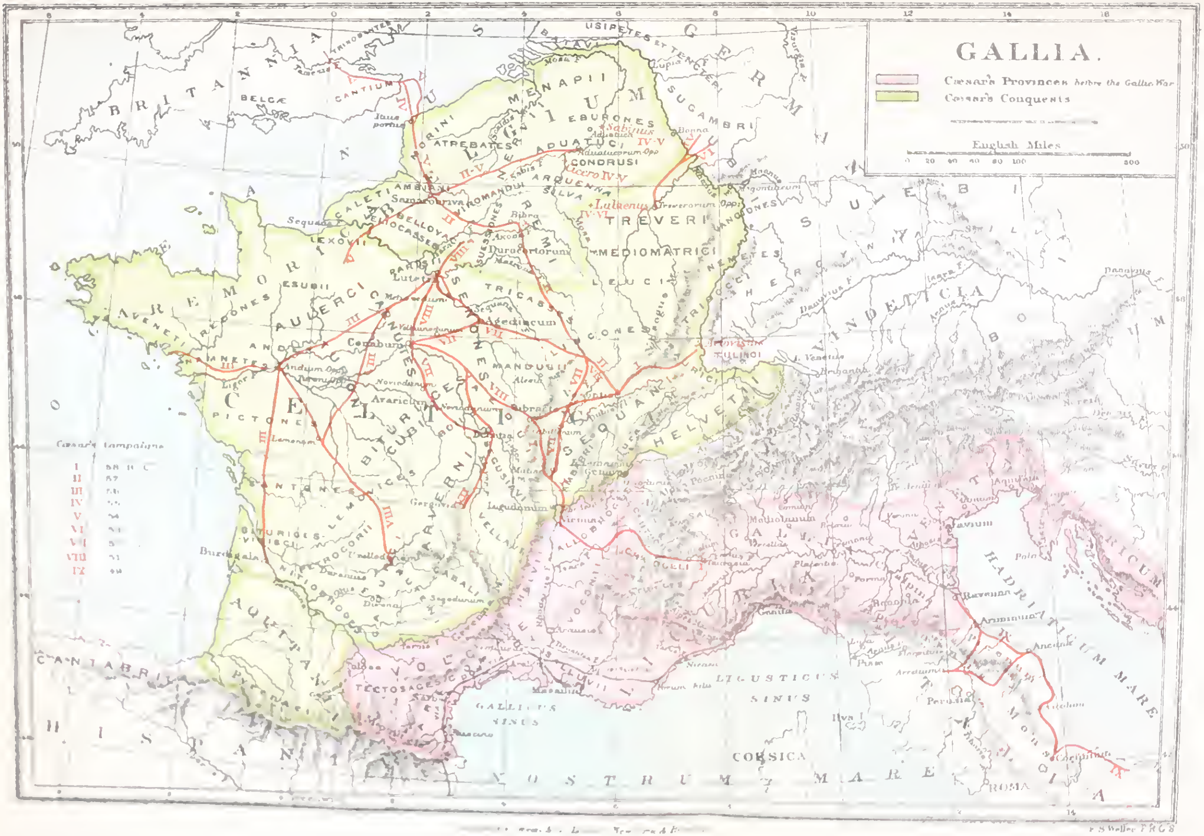
**Falces murales** (*B. G.* iii. 14) were hooks for tearing down **pennae** (battlements) or **loricae** (parapets).

69. The general was attended by a picked body of legionaries called his **Cohors Praetoria**, to guard his person and execute his orders. Some of these were **evocati**—that is, discharged veterans who rejoined the colours by special invitation of the general, and enjoyed special privileges. Attached to him, too, were young men of rank (**contubernales**) who joined the Praetorian Cohort of some commander with whom

they were on terms of personal friendship (*cf. B. G.* i. 39, l. 16, 'qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti').

70. **Exploratores** were small reconnoitring parties sent out to discover the nature of the country and the dispositions of the enemy. **Speculatores** (*B. G.* ii. 11) were spies sent out singly. **Pabulatores** (*B. G.* v. 17) were foraging parties sent to collect forage for the baggage beasts (iumenta); **lignatores** were sent to get wood, and **aquatores** (*B. C.* i. 73) went to draw water. **Calones** were soldiers' slaves, who performed all kinds of menial tasks for them; and **lixae** were sutlers or camp-traders.

71. Suetonius tells us (*Iul.* xxvi.: 'legionibus stipendium in perpetuum duplicavit') that Caesar doubled the pay of his troops. On the improved scale of pay the private soldier would receive $6\frac{2}{3}$ asses per day. Reckoning the denarius (of 10 asses) at 8*d.* roughly, this would give the private $5\frac{1}{8}$*d.* per day, the centurion $10\frac{2}{3}$*d.*, and the horse-soldier 16 pence; but it must be remembered that deductions were made for corn rations, clothes and arms.



GALLIA.
Cæsar's Provinces before the Gallic War
Cæsar's Conquests
English Miles
BRITANNIA
BELGÆ
CANTIUM
GERMANIA
BATAVI
USIPETES ET TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
MENAPII
EBURONES
ADUATUCI
CONDRUSI
ATREBATES
MORINI
VIROMANDUI
ARDUENNA SILVA
TREVERI
MEDIOMATRICI
LEUCI
TRIBOCCI
NEMETES
SUEBI
HERCYNIA
VINDELICIA
BOII
REMI
SUESSIONES
BELLOVACI
VELIOCASSES
CALETI
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
Durocortorum
LEXOVII
ARMORICÆ
VENETI
ESUBII
AULERCI
CARNUTES
SENONES
TRICASSES
LINGONES
Agedincum
Lutetia
Cenabum
Andium
Noviodunum
Avaricum
CELTICA
PICTONES
SANTONES
BITURIGES CUBI
ARVERNI
MANDUBII
Alesia
Bibracte
AEDUI
SEQUANI
HELVETII
Lugudunum
Genava
LEMOVICES
BITURIGES VIVISCI
Burdigala
PETROCORII
CADURCI
NITIOBROGES
GABALI
AQUITANIA
CANTABRI
HISPANIA
PYRENAEI
VOLCÆ TECTOSAGES
ALLOBROGES
VOCONTII
SALLUVII
Massilia
GALLICUS SINUS
LIGUSTICUS SINUS
CORSICA
NOSTRUM MARE
GALLIA
LIGURIA
ETRURIA
ROMA
Ravenna
Ariminum
Ancona
HADRIATICUM MARE
ILLYRICUM
Aquileia
Cæsar's Campaigns
F. S. Weller F.R.G.S.

# DE BELLO GALLICO

## LIBER PRIMUS

### GAUL IN 58 B.C.

*The geography of Gaul. Its inhabitants*

**1.** GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur: pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni: spectant in septentrionem

et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

## THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETII

*Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to leave their homes*

**2**. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messalla et M. Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum ccxl, in latitudinem clxxx patebant.

*The preparations of the Helvetii. The ambitious designs of Orgetorix*

**3**. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas

facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.



A **carrus,** or small two-wheeled cart, used in Roman armies to carry part of the **impedimenta.**

It was also used by Celtic peoples, such as the Helvetii, who bought up all the carri they could get with a view to their projected migration.

They made a laager of carri and stood at bay behind it in Ch. 26.

The Germans, too, had carri round which the battle raged in much the same way in Ch. 51.

The illustration is from Trajan's Column.

*His designs are divulged. Trial, rescue, and death of Orgetorix*

**4**. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere

coëgerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

*The Helvetii complete their preparations*

**5.** Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latovicis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum iis proficiscantur, Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

*The two alternative routes. A day fixed for the start*

**6.** Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix

qua singuli carri ducerentur: mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

*Caesar's prompt action: he decides to refuse permission to the Helvetian Envoys, but temporises*

**7.** Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum non putabat;

neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

*The wall and trench built to exclude them finished. Permission to pass through the Roman province finally refused. The Helvetii vainly attempt to cross the Rhône*

**8.** Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum



**At work in the trenches.** A legionary soldier with his sand basket; the Roman soldier was as handy with his spade as with his sword, and to his skill in camp-making owed his victories as much as to his fighting qualities.



A **castellum,** or redoubt. (From the Vatican Vergil.) It is night, the moon and stars are shining brightly, and the soldiers on guard have a fire for warmth or culinary purposes.

decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani

posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe deiecti, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

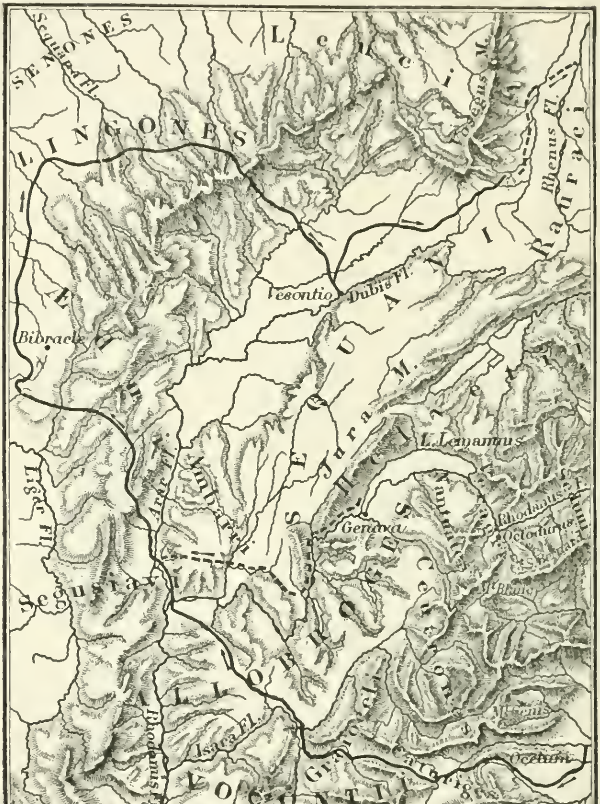
*By the intercession of Dumnorix the Helvetii are allowed to pass through the territory of the Sequani*

**9.** Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant, Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.

*Caesar's reasons for preventing their passage. He returns to Cisalpine Gaul to collect his forces, and with five legions hastily marches to the Rhône*

**10.** Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines

## General Map of the Campaign of the Year 58 B.C.




Roman Miles

0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80

Stanford's Geographical Estabt

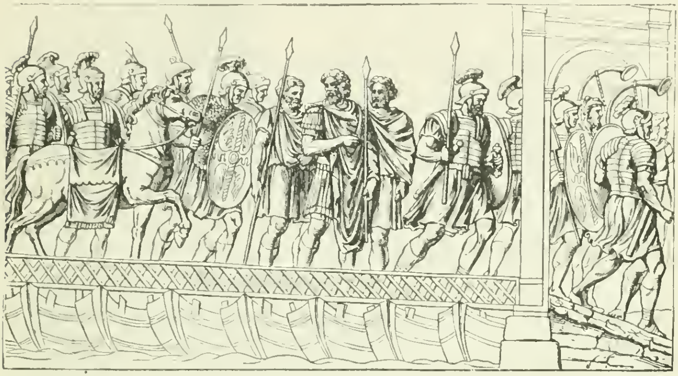
1. The **dotted line** starting from Genava shows the route of the Helvetii through the territory of the Sequani and Ambarri.

2. The crossed swords on the E. bank of the Arar mark the scene of the destruction of the Tigurini (12, l. 10), who had not yet crossed.

3. The **thick black line** shows Caesar's march from Cisalpine Gaul *via* Ocelum, Ch. 10. After destroying the Tigurini near the Arar, he crossed that river and routed the rest of the Helvetii near **Bibracte.** Thence he marched to **Vesontio,** and thence N. to meet and defeat Ariovistus.

4. **A dotted line** shows the route taken by the broken remnant of the Germans to reach the Rhine.

bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum, legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tres, quae



**Roman soldiers crossing the Danube on a bridge of boats.**

The band of **cornicines,** horn-blowers, leads the way, because they played the melody of the march.

Among the figures we can distinguish three superior officers, bareheaded, some centurions wearing helmets with plumes (cristae), and ordinary soldiers.

The railing, which is generally shown on bridges of boats, was to prevent accidents with the horses.

circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

*The Aedui send to Caesar for help against the advancing Helvetii. Caesar resolves to strike at once*

**11.** Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore, quo Aedui, Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

*Three of the four Helvetian pagi had already crossed the Arar: Caesar attacks the fourth and cuts it to pieces*

**12.** Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem

eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.



**Legionary soldiers on the march.** (From Trajan's Column.) They are **impediti** (Intro. § 61), and carry their **sarcinae**; we can see how they carried their helmet and shield on a march. They are crossing a river on a bridge of boats, **ratibus ac lintribus iunctis**, as also shown on p. 35.

*Caesar crosses the Arar in pursuit. The Helvetii send Divico to plead for peace: he reminds Caesar of Helvetian prowess in the past*

**13.** Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit:

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute contenderent, quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

*Caesar states the terms on which he will make peace. Divico breaks off the conference*

**14.** His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint,

his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse testem.

*Caesar's cavalry repulsed. The armies march within touch of each other for a fortnight*

**15.** Hoc responso dato discessit. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter



A horse-soldier, **eques.** He wears (i.) the tunic; (ii.) a cuirass of scale armour, **lorica squamata**; (iii.) a round shield, **parma.** He is armed with a heavy lance.
(From the Column of Antoninus.)

fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

*The Aedui delay to supply corn. Caesar calls their chiefs together and upbraids them*

**16.** Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

*Liscus replies and hints at treachery among the Aedui*

**17.** Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa

atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant: praestare, si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coërceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessaria re coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

*In a private conference Liscus reveals the ambition and treachery of Dumnorix, brother of Divitiacus*

**18.** Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; repperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propin-

quas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

*Before taking any measures against Dumnorix Caesar summons Divitiacus and refers the matter privately to him*

**19.** Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet et cotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui

summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

*Divitiacus admits the truth of the charge, but pleads for his brother. Caesar summons Dumnorix and pardons him for Divitiacus's sake*

**20.** Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset, quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se

Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

*The Helvetii encamp at the foot of a mountain. Titus Labienus is sent to occupy the summit. Caesar advances against the enemy and sends on P. Considius to reconnoitre*

**21**. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

*Considius reports that the mountain is held by the enemy. His mistake is discovered. Caesar continues his pursuit*

**22**. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri: id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tem-

pore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

*Caesar directs his march to Bibracte: the enemy harass his rear*

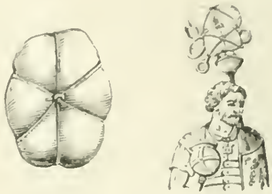
**23.** Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.



A legionary soldier, **gregarius miles**: he wears (i.) the tunic, **tunica**; (ii.) a cuirass, **lorica segmentata**; (iii.) a casque, **cassis**; (iv.) military shoes, **caligae**; (v.) a shield, **scutum**; (vi.) a private soldier's belt, **cingulum militiae**, with the ends of the straps in front; (vii.) the baldrick, **balteus**, passing over the left shoulder and supporting the sword, **gladius**, at the right hip.

*Caesar and the Helvetii prepare for battle*

**24**. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, ita uti supra eas in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret ac totum montem hominibus compleret; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.



1 2

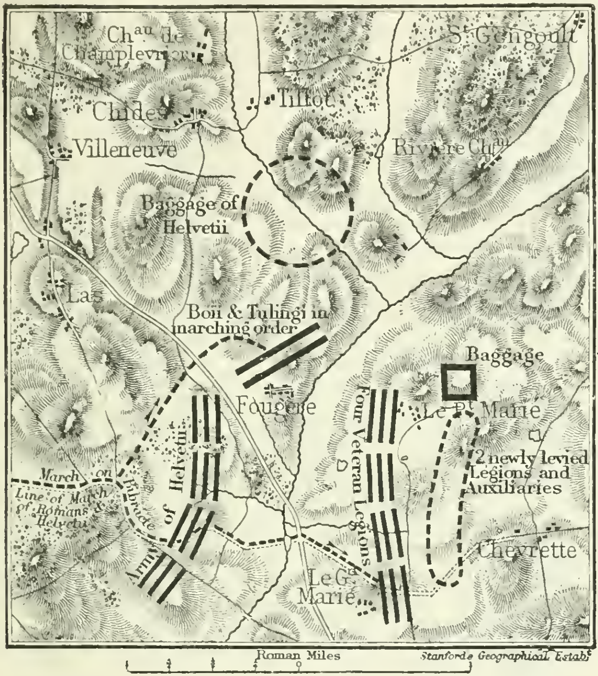
1. A **sarcina**, or soldier's pack.

2. A legionary soldier carrying his sarcina (mulus Marianus). From Trajan's Column. It shows how a Roman soldier on the march carried his helmet suspended on the right side of his breast by a strap passing round his neck. A soldier so loaded was said to be **impeditus.**

*The battle*

**25.** Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra

PLAN OF THE FIELD OF BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.




1. The battlefield lay to the W. of Bibracte (Mont Beuvray, a height eight miles W. of Autun).

2. The Helvetii had been in full march westwards to reach the land of the Santones, with Caesar in pursuit for fifteen days at a distance of five or six miles.

3. When he had only corn for two days left, Caesar turned aside and marched on Bibracte.

4. The Helvetii, supposing the Romans to be demoralised, retraced their steps and harassed Caesar's rear.

They were now marching west to east, as in the plan.

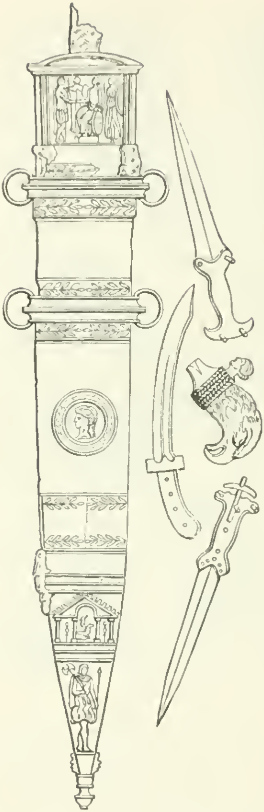
5. The plan shows Caesar's two legions of recruits and auxiliaries **in summo iugo,** and his four veteran legions half way up the side, **in colle medio.**

The laager of the Helvetii is also shown towards the N.

6. The Helvetii advanced, drove in the Roman cavalry, but were repulsed by the four legions, who had the advantage of higher ground. The Helvetii then withdrew to an adjoining hill.

7. Meanwhile, the Helvetian rear of Boii and Tulingi arrived and wheeled round to attack the Romans on the right flank, **latere aperto,** and the Helvetii renewed the fight.

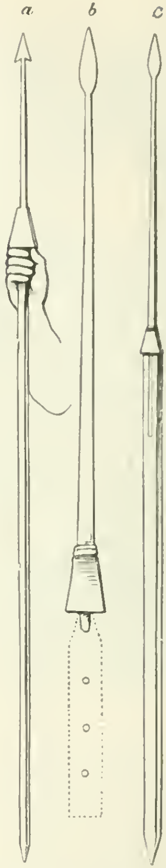
8. Caesar had thus two attacks to repel : i. from the returning Helvetii, to whom he opposed his front two lines ; and ii. the Boii and Tulingi, whom he met by wheeling his third line off to the right.



Roman **gladii** (Intro. §59). The straight bare swords on the right are gladii of privates.

The hilt, **capulus**, shown separately, is more ornamental, such as an officer of rank would have to his gladius.

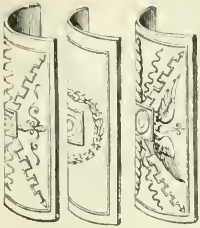
The gladius in sheath, **vagina**, on the left was found at Maintz in 1818. It is of beautiful embossed gold and silver work. On the sheath is a portrait of Tiberius. It was probably a sword of honour presented by that Emperor to some officer.




**The Roman pilum.** (*a*) and (*b*) are two iron heads of pila found near Maintz and preserved in the museum there; (*c*) the weapon conjecturally restored.

The stem of the iron head would show a square section; the barbed head itself is in the form of a four-sided pyramid. At the lower end is a narrow metal tongue which served for insertion in the wooden shaft. See Intro. § 58.

impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato bracchio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum spatio, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros a latere aperto aggressi circumvenire et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipertito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustineret.



Three **scuta** from Trajan's Column. The shield of the legionary soldier was about 4 ft. high, by 2½ ft. wide, made of boards with a covering of hide, and bound top and bottom with iron.

These three show different devices (lightning, wreath, winged lightning), by which different detachments were distinguished.

In the centre is seen the metal boss, or **umbo**, which helped to ward off blows.

On the march the shield was carried in a leather case, **tegimentum.** In *B.G.* ii. 21, the attack of the Nervii was so sudden that the men had not even time to strip the tegimenta off their shields.

*Overthrow and pursuit of the Helvetii*

**26.** Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela

coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros raedasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent: qui si iuvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.



The **amentum**, or thong, used for hurling some kinds of spear.
The **tragula**, used by the Helvetii, was thrown in this manner.

*Surrender of the Helvetii: a body of them try to escape to the Rhine*

**27.** Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare iussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia vi eius pagi, qui Verbigenus



A Roman soldier with a prisoner of war: from the Arch of Severus. The prisoner is manacled to his captor.

appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt

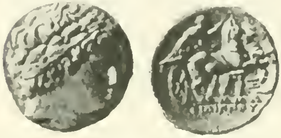
*Caesar orders the surrendered Helvetii to return to their homes his reason for so doing*

**28.** Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit et, quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

*Register of the number of the Helvetii who left their homes: how many returned*

**29.** In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae,

quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia



1 2

**Stater of Philip I. of Macedon.**
**(1) Head of Apollo.**
**(2) Charioteer.**



**Gallic Imitation of Stater of Philip.**

These coins, the Greek original and the Gallic imitation, are of interest as illustrating :—

i. The Greek influence in Gaul, of which Massilia (founded 600 B.C.) had long been the centre. The traders, **mercatores**, in Ch. 1, doubtless came from Massilia.

ii. The use of Greek characters by Celts. Caesar tells us (*B.G.* i. 29) that the Register found in the Helvetian camp was written in Greek characters.

Mommsen, iv. 214, gives an inscription in the Celtic language, but in Greek characters.

iii. The mechanical skill of the Celts in working metals and their lack of skill in design. They confine themselves to imitating two or three Greek dies, which they distort. (Mommsen, iv. 221.)

The stater was a Greek gold coin worth *roughly* 1*l.* of our money.

cclxiii, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latovicorum xiv, Rauricorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

## THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

*Ambassadors come with congratulations from all parts of Gaul: they beg Caesar to arrange a conference*

**30**. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas

bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, ut sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et iureiurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

*Divitiacus, as spokesman of the assembled Gallic chiefs, describes the aggressions and tyranny of Ariovistus. Caesar is their only hope: they implore his aid*

**31**. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, uti sibi secreto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias

Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iureiurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos

poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

*The unhappy plight of the Sequani*

**32.** Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Eius rei quae causa esset, miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea, quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

*Caesar resolves to right their wrongs: his reasons for taking the matter vigorously in hand*

**33.** His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, in primis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

*Ariovistus declines to fall in with Caesar's proposal for a conference*

**34.** Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo

agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

*Caesar sends a second embassy to Ariovistus and formulates his demands*

**35.** His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret: deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messalla, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

*Ariovistus sends a defiant reply*

**36.** Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere se a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederetur: intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

*Caesar resolves on immediate action, and marches against Ariovistus*

**37.** Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres.

Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

*Caesar seizes and garrisons Vesontio*

**38.** Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus processisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum mille sescentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita, ut radices montis



**A Roman officer,** dux, legatus, or tribunus militum, who were all dressed alike.

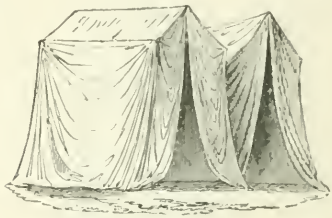
He wears, (i.) the tunic, **tunica,** reaching near the elbows and the knees; (ii.) a cuirass, **lorica,** the pleated appendages of which at shoulder and waist are visible; (iii.) the officer's cloak, or **paludamentum**; (iv.) the officer's belt, **cinctorium,** round his waist, with the sword suspended at the **left** instead of at the right as in the case of privates; (v.) short breeches **(femoralia)**, and shoes (not the caliga, which was worn only by privates and centurions).

Superior officers are generally represented bare-headed.

ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficitet cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

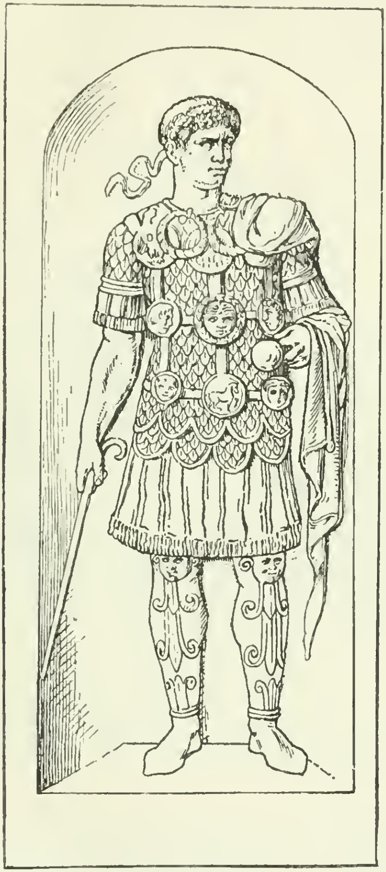
*Panic in the Roman army, caused by reports as to the ferocity of the Germans. A mutiny threatens to break out*

**39.** Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur.



Tents, **tabernacula**, of leather or canvas stretched on poles and cords. (From the Column of Antoninus.)

Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum

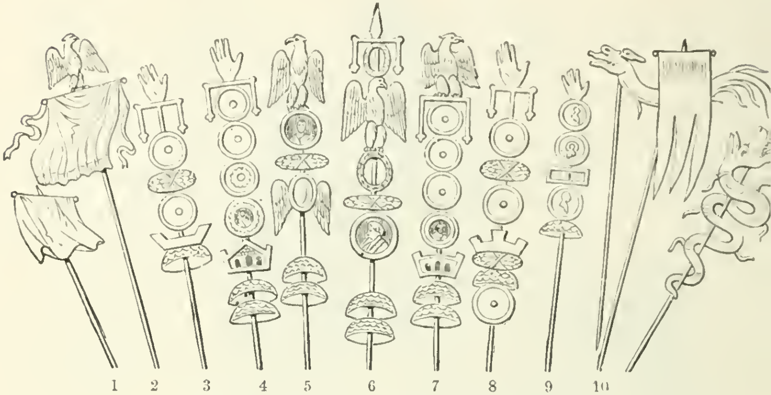


**A Roman centurion.** He wears, (i.) the **tunica**; (ii.) a cuirass of scale armour **lorica squamata**; (iii.) greaves, **ocreae**; (iv.) the **sagum** thrown over his left arm.

The metal discs on his breast are **phalerae,** military decorations, awarded, like our medals, for distinguished service.

In his right hand is the vine rod, **vitis,** which was at once the symbol of his authority and an instrument for maintaining it.

in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut




**Roman military standards : signa militaria.**

1 is a **vexillum,** a square flag mounted on a cross-tree ; this was the banner of small detachments and of cavalry. 2 is an **aquila,** the eagle or great standard of the legion, a gold or silver eagle with outstretched wings on a pole ornamented with a vexillum. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 are the signa of **maniples.** Among the devices are, (i.) an outstretched hand, either a symbol of fidelity or a relic of the earliest times when the standard of the 'handful' of men, manipulus, was a handful of hay or straw on a pole (cf. Ov. *Fast.* iii. 117 :

'Pertica suspensos portabat longa maniplos,
Unde maniplaris nomina miles habet') :

(ii.) various beasts, eagles, boars, etc. ; (iii.) portraits of generals or emperors ; (iv.) discs (corresponding to the phalerae of the centurion) ; (v.) walls and pinnacles to commemorate some action ; (vi.) tablets with the number of the maniple, etc.

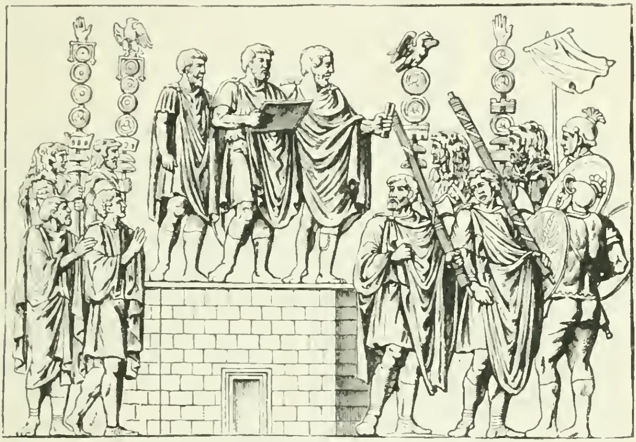
The cohort had no special standard ; that of the senior of the three maniples in each cohort was the standard of that cohort.

10 are standards of barbarians.

rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiarant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

*Caesar assembles his officers and centurions and upbraids them for their fears: his compliment to the Tenth Legion*

**40.** Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se



**A General haranguing his troops. Allocutio.**

He is standing on a platform, **suggestus,** in the **forum** of the camp. His officers stand by, and the standards, **signa,** are there.

On such occasions the general praised, blamed, or encouraged his troops and held courts martial. Two **lictors** stand by ready to scourge or execute, should a sentence be pronounced.

Caesar's speech in Ch. 40 was not an allocutio to the whole army, but an address to the ordinary council of war, **consilium,** to which **all** the centurions were specially invited.

consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus

bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo iudicari posse quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse

aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor plus valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

*Marvellous change in the temper of the troops: they apologise to Caesar. The march is resumed*

**41.** Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent; se nec umquam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

*Ariovistus proposes a conference. Caesar consents: his cavalry escort*

**42.** Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis cognitis suis postulatis fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

*The conference: Caesar reiterates his demands*

**43.** Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad

colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae senatus consulta quotiens quamque honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat: ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

*Ariovistus returns an arrogant answer and insists on his prior rights in Gaul*

**44.** Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum

a Gallis: non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse: sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: eius rei testimonio esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et

cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et, quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

*Caesar justifies the interference of the Romans in the affairs of Gaul*

**45.** Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

*A sudden attack by the Germans cuts short the conference*

**46.** Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum

accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fecit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

*Envoys are sent at Ariovistus's suggestion to hold further conference with him: he casts them into chains*

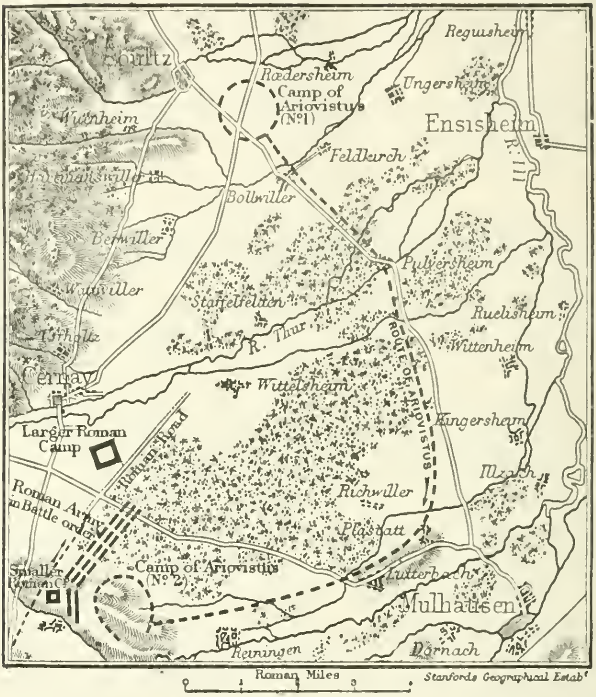
**47.** Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatum aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non

esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit.

*For five days Caesar tries in vain to draw Ariovistus to risk a battle. How the Germans fight*

**48.** Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis sublevati equorum cursum adaequarent.

PLAN OF THE FIELD OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS




1. The battlefield was near Mülhausen, in Alsace-Lorraine, 17½ miles N.W. of Bâle.

2. Having secured Vesontio, Caesar marched N. to meet Ariovistus and encamped near Cernay (Larger Roman Camp).

At this time Ariovistus was about twenty miles to the N., near Kolmar.

3. The **tumulus terrenus**, where Caesar and Ariovistus had their interview, lay half-way between Cernay and Feldkirch.

4. After the interview Ariovistus moved his camp from Kolmar S. to near Soultz, at the foot of the Vosges, **sub monte.**

5. Next day Ariovistus marched round and established camp No. 2, two miles from the Roman camp at Cernay, to cut Caesar off from support on the S.

6. Ariovistus remained in his new camp and declined battle.

7. Caesar now marched about half a mile from Ariovistus's camp, and while his first and second lines stood to arms his third line constructed his lesser camp, **castra minora,** which he garrisoned with two legions and some auxiliaries.

His four other legions retired to his original camp, **castra maiora.**

8. Ariovistus attacked the lesser camp, but still declined an engagement, so Caesar advanced and compelled him to fight.

The double line in front of the lesser camp represents Caesar's auxiliaries (**alarii,** Ch. 41).

*Caesar constructs and garrisons a lesser camp*

**49.** Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sescentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sescentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo setius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

*Ariovistus attacks the lesser camp: his reason for declining battle*

**50.** Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum

proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

*Caesar advances to the camp of Ariovistus. The Germans prepare for battle*

**51.** Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.



A **raeda,** or four-wheeled travelling carriage, used by the Romans to transport their families as well as their goods.

Being sometimes used for long journeys it was provided with a covering, as suggested by the dotted line in the picture.

The name and the thing itself were probably Celtic, and it was naturally used by migrating peoples like the Helvetii and the Germans, who took their families as well as their fighting men with them.

(The illustration is adapted from Trajan's Column.)

*The battle*

**52.** Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

*Rout and flight of the Germans*

**53.** Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repperierunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in

Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraque in ea fuga periit. Fuerunt duae filiae: harum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.



A soldier in a boat, **linter**, rowing some wine-casks across a river. From Trajan's Column.

The linter was a flat-bottomed rowing boat of shallow draught.

In Ch. 12 the Helvetii used lintres to form a bridge of boats to cross the Arar.

In Ch. 53 a few Germans, amongst them Ariovistus, escaped across the Rhine in lintres.

*Caesar settles his troops in winter quarters and sets out for Gallia Cisalpina*

**54.** Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

# NOTES

1\. 1. **omnis**: 'the whole of' = tota. Cf. Cic. *Pro Cluent.* i. 1, *omnem accusatoris orationem.*

1\. **Gallia**: *independent* Gaul—*i.e.* exclusive of the Province, the land of the Allobroges and Cisalpine Gaul.

2\. **unam, aliam, tertiam**: in **asyndeton**, *i.e.* not joined by any co-ordinating conjunction. This is common in Caesar.

2\. **aliam.** Another (of three or more): the other (of two) would be *alteram.*

2\. **qui**: ei, qui. The antecedent is often omitted, *when of the same case* as the relative.

3\. **ipsorum**: for *sua ipsorum*, which is more emphatic than *sua* alone. See *B. G.* i. 40, l. 13, for another instance of omission of *suus.*

3\. **nostra**: = *Romana*, as often in Caesar even in Orat. Obliq. See note on 44, l. 29.

5\. **Gallos**: the inhabitants of Central Gaul (Celtica); of purer Celtic race than the Belgae, who had German, and than the Aquitani, who had Iberian elements in the population. 'Gaul' and 'Celt' are only different forms of the same word.

6\. **dividit**: singular, because the idea is singular. The Seine and Marne form *one* frontier.

7\. **cultu**: the comforts of civilisation (physical, external); **humanitate**: refinement (mental, internal).

7\. **provinciae**: the Roman Province, formed 121 B.C., and extended 118 B.C. and 106 B.C. For its boundaries see Vocab. **Gallia.**

8\. **mercatores**: 'traders,' doubtless from Massilia, the great seaport in the Province. See note to illustration on p. 52.

9\. **commeant**: 'go to and fro' (of regular journeys, such as traders make).

10\. **pertinent**: 'tend to;' in l. 25, 'pertinet' = 'extends.'

11\. **incolunt**: intransitive; in l. 2, transitive.

12\. **qua de causa**: 'for *this* reason.' Where English has the demonstrative, Latin often begins a principal sentence with a relative. **The relative at the beginning of a principal sentence co-ordinates it with some preceding sentence.**

12\. **Helvetii**: for their position see Map and Vocab. The Ager Helvetius was included in Gallia Celtica.

16. **eorum**: 'of these nations,' *i.e.* of their country. So in l. 20 Belgae = Belgium.

16. **obtinere**: 'to occupy, hold (*teneo, ob* = against opposition)'; the word rarely means 'obtain.'

19. **ab Sequanis**: 'in the direction of the S.'

20. **vergit ad**: 'faces;' often used of geographical position. The word refers to the general slope of the country.

20. **septentriones**: the N. The word means 'the seven stars,' *i.e.* the Great Bear, which revolves round the Pole Star. It is less commonly used in the singular.



The **Septentriones** or **Seven Stars** of the Great Bear, which always revolve round the North Star.

21. **inferiorem partem**: 'the lower course,' near the mouth.

23. **orientem solem**: the E. Often simply *oriens*.

24. **Oceani**: *i.e.* the Atlantic. *Oceanus* or *Mare Oceanum* is the great outer sea beyond the confines of the Mediterranean.

25 **occasum solis**: the W.; **inter . . . septentriones**, *i.e.* the N.W.

2. 2. **M. Messalla et M. Pisone consulibus**: 61 B.C. The Roman method of naming a date was to name the Consuls for the year. The abl. abs. is used, and *et* is generally omitted.

4. **nobilitatis**: 'the nobles;' abstract noun used collectively.

4. **civitati**: used collectively = *civibus*: hence plur. *exirent*.

5. **perfacile esse**: the construction slides into Oratio Obliqua without any formal verb of saying; but 'persuasit' implies speech.

6. **id . . . persuasit**: 'id' = 'ut exirent,' which is, therefore, a substantival clause.

7. **hoc**: 'by this amount'—abl. of **measure of difference** used with comparatives (e.g. *facilius*).

8. **continentur**: in l. 17 = 'bounded by;' here with accessory notion of inconvenience, 'hemmed in by.'

9. **altus**: 'high' or 'deep,' according as the direction is vertically up or down.

13. **his rebus**: abl. absolute, 'things being so,' *i.e.* 'the result of this state of things was that.'

15. **qua ex parte**: 'and on that ground.' **Qua** = *et ea*: co-ordinative. See on l. 12. **Pars**, here = 'ground,' 'connection,' 'respect': not as in 1, l. 19, 'side,' 'direction.'

15. **magno dolore afficiebantur**: 'were deeply annoyed.' See Vocab. **afficio.**

16. **pro**: 'in proportion to,' 'considering.'

18. **milia passuum.** The Roman mile contained 1,000 paces (*i.e.* double steps), and is 143 yds. less than the English mile.

17. **angustos**: the population of the Ager Helvetius (*i.e.* Switzerland, Western half) works out at 6 to the sq. mile, taking the figures in 29, l. 10. But farm and pasture support a far scantier population than industrial Switzerland, with 183 to the sq. mile, now has.

**3.** 2. **quae . . . pertinerent**: 'such things as were necessary for their departure.' The rel. is used with a subj. to express **consequence.**

3. **comparare, coëmere, facere, confirmare**: asyndeton, as in 1, l. 2. It is a frequent feature of Caesar's style, and part of his soldierly brevity and conciseness.

3. **carrorum.** See p. 29 for cut of Carrus. Napoléon III. (*Histoire de Jules César*, ii. 66) estimates that no fewer than 8,500 carri were required to transport three months' corn rations and other belongings of the Helvetii.

3. **quam maximum**: 'as large as possible.' **Quam with a superlative,** often with, sometimes without, part of *possum*, **expresses the utmost possible degree.**

4. **coëmere**: 'to buy up' (*cum*, 'together,' generally takes the form *co* in composition before a vowel).

8. **lege**: 'formal enactment.'

14. **regnum**: 'the kingship.' A generation before Caesar's arrival in Gaul the different Celtic clans were ruled each by its king. Everywhere, except among the Belgae of the north, revolutions had occurred by which the royal power had been set aside and usurped by nobles. (Mommsen, *H. R.* iv. 222.)

17. **amicus.** Ariovistus, too (43, l. 11), received the title of Friend. Distinctions of this kind are always spoken of as conferred by the Senate, under whose control were all the 'Foreign Affairs' of Rome.

22. **Dumnorigi.** He was the head of the patriot or anti-Roman party among the Aeduans; his brother, **Divitiacus**, was the firm friend of the Romans.

23. **principatum**: 'position of greatest influence.' The word does not refer to any legally constituted authority.

24. **acceptus**: 'a great favourite with.' Other instances of **participles used as adjectives** in this book are: *audiens*, *auctiores*, *expeditior*, *confertissima*, *exercitatissimi*.

26. **factu**: the so-called supine in *-u*, which is used with *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, and adjectives of fitness or unfitness, &c. It is really the ablative of a defective verbal noun, of which only the accusative and ablative cases singular are found. It is rare in Caesar; *factu* and *natu* are the only words he so uses. *Factu* is scarcely wanted (pleonastic) with *facile* and *perficere*.

26. **conata**: 'things attempted'—*i.e.* 'attempts,' 'undertakings.' The word is an instance of a **participle used as a substantive.** Cf. *senatus consultum*, a resolution of the Senate. Note also that the partioiple is passive, though *conor* is a deponent verb. See note on 11, l. 11.

28. **quin**: 'that,' used with subjunctive after *negative* sentences expressing doubt.

29. **plurimum**: superlative adverb, to be taken with *possent*, which is used absolutely = 'to be powerful,' 'to have influence.'

31. **inter se . . . dant**: 'exchange.' There is no proper reciprocal pronoun in Latin; the deficiency is supplied in various ways: (i.) *inter nos, vos, se*, &c.; (ii.) *alius alium*; (iii.) *alter alterum*; (iv.) repetition of a noun, e.g. *vir virum*.

32. **tres populos**: the Aedui, Sequani, and Helvetii, whose representatives were Dumnorix, Casticus, and Orgetorix respectively.

33. **totius Galliae . . . potiri**. *Potior*, 'I make myself powerful' (cf. *possum* = *potis sum*), governs an ablative (of the instrument), or a genitive (of the thing lacking or supplied); this is the only passage where Caesar uses *potior* with a genitive.

33. **sperant**. An infinitive dependent on verbs of hoping or promising is generally in the *future* tense: *posse* is a frequent exception, but, after all, *potiri posse* almost = *potituros esse*.

**4.** 1. **indicium**: = *indices*, 'spies': abstract for concrete.

2. **ex vinclis**: '*in* chains'; so 43, l. 7, *ex equis colloqui*, *on* horseback. The same thing is looked at from a different point of view in the two languages.

3. **damnatum**: him condemned, *i.e.* 'his condemnation': the participle has a conditional force, 'if he were . . .'

3. **ut igni cremaretur**: substantival clause in apposition to *poenam*, the subject of *sequi*. Burning alive seems to have been a frequent punishment among the Gauls: cf. *B. G.* vi. 16, where the great wicker crates used to carry out the sentence are described.

4. **causae dictio**: 'pleading in defence,' 'standing one's trial': *causam dicere* is the regular legal phrase.

5. **familiam**: the whole household, including—and, indeed, especially—the slaves; not 'family' in our sense, *i.e.* wife and children. All the Celts who were not knights or druids—that is, the bulk of the population—were slaves. (*B. G.* vi. 13.) Thus it was that a noble like Orgetorix was able to bring 10,000 armed retainers to overawe the Court. Compare our own turbulent barons, say under Stephen.

6. **clientes**: 'vassals,' not personally slaves like the *familia*, but freemen, who, like the villeins in early England, stood in feudal dependence on some lord for the sake of his protection.

6. **obaeratos**: 'debtors,' who in default of payment had surrendered their freedom.

8. **eodem**: 'to the same place,' *i.e.* to the *iudicium*.

12. **suspicio, quin . . . consciverit**. See 3, l. 28, for the same use of *quin*. The manner of Orgetorix' death remained a mystery, but he probably committed suicide on finding that the authorities (*magistratus*) would be strong enough to defeat his plans.

13. **consciscere**: 'to award,' 'inflict upon' one's self death—the usual phrase for suicide.

**5.** 1. **nihilo**: abl. of measure of difference.

2. **ut . . . exeant**: a substantival clause in apposition to and explaining **id**.

3. **oppida**: walled towns; **vicos**, open villages; **privata aedificia**, isolated homesteads.

5. **incendunt, comburunt, iubent**: asyndeton, as often in Caesar in enumerations of steps taken.

7. **domum reditio**: an instance of a verbal noun in *-io* retaining the construction of its verb. Cf. 'obtemperatio legibus,' 'quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?'

In 'causae dictio' (4, l. 1) we have the more usual objective genitive.

7 **domum**: 'homewards,' adverbial accusative answering the question 'whither?' with verbs of motion: *rus*, 'to the country,' and *foras*, '(to) abroad,' are other instances.

8. **molita cibaria**: 'rations of meal.'

8. **trium mensum**: genitive of description, 'for three months.' Cf. *B. G.* vii. 71,: 'dierum xxx frumentum.'

9. **sibi quemque**: 'each man for himself;' *quisque* is frequently combined with *se* or *suus*: the **reflexive immediately precedes** the **quisque**, almost without exception.

10. **Rauricis.** This Celtic tribe is curiously not mentioned with the rest in 28, l. 6, either by inadvertence of the author or by fault of the MS. The T. and L. are German tribes.

11. **cum iis**: *secum* referring to Helvetii, the subject of the principal verb *persuadent*, would be more according to rule: when the subordinate clause has its verb (*proficiscantur*) in the subjunctive to express a **purpose**, *se* is used to refer to the subject of the principal verb (Roby, 2267, 2268, b.). See note on 6, l. 14.

6. 1. **itineribus.** Caesar often repeats the noun in the relatival clause, for the sake of extra clearness.

2. **possent**: subjunctive in a relative clause expressing **consequence.**

2. **unum per Sequanos**: this route lay along the right or north bank of the Rhône. At this point the Jura mountains come so close to the river that only a very narrow passage, called the Pas-de-l'Ecluse, is left. As there was only room for one *carrus* at a time, this route was almost impracticable for the Helvetii. (See note on 3, l. 3.)

4. **singuli carri**: one at a time, 'in single file.'

4. **ducerentur**: see *possent*, l. 2.

6. **alterum.** To pass through the Roman Province it was necessary for the Helvetii to cross the Rhône at some point between Geneva and the Pas-de-l'Ecluse. For the means Caesar adopted to prevent their passage see note on 8, l. 4.

6. **multo**: ablative of measure of difference.

8. **qui nuper pacati erant.** Three years before, in 61 B.C., the Allobroges had broken into desperate revolt, and had been subjugated ('pacified' the Romans called it) by the Governor, Gaius Pomptinus.

9. **vado transitur**: is crossed by ford (instrumental abl.), *i.e.* 'is fordable.' Many transitive verbs, such as *inire*, *transire*, are formed by composition from neuter verbs like *ire*.

10. **proximum**: as in 1, l. 10, with dative (common with verbs and adjectives of nearness or remoteness). For other constructions, see note on 46, l. 2.

12. **nondum bono animo**: 'not yet well-disposed'; abl. of quality, with epithet. Ever since their first subjugation in 121 B.C. the Allo-

broges nad been unwilling subjects of Rome. In 58 B.C. they were, of course, still sore from their recent defeat by Pomptinus.

**viderentur**: subjunctive because the clause is subordinate in Oratio Obliqua (suboblique).

14. **eos**: we should expect *se*: see note on 5, l. 11: in both these clauses *suus* is already used referring to the *subject of its own clause*, and that is probably why the use of *se* referring to the subject of the main verb is inadmissible.

16. **qua die**: see note on l. 1 for the repetition of *dies*.

16. **Dies**, in the singular, is often f. of an appointed time, as here; m. as 'a day,' *i.e.* period of twenty-four hours. Cf. *is dies*: in the plural it is always m.

16. **conveniant**: subjunctive with relative expressing a **purpose**.

17. **a. d. V. Kal. Apr.**: March 28, *i.e.* five days inclusive before the 1st of April; 'ante diem Quintum Kalendas Apriles' is probably for 'ante (die Quinto) Kal. Apr.,' *i.e.* before the Calends of April, with the further detail 'on the fifth day' thrown in parenthetically: we must then suppose *die quinto* to have been attracted into the accusative by the influence of *ante*, which really governs *Kalendas*. For the Roman Calendar see *Rev. Lat. Primer*, p. 216.

17. **L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus**: *i.e.* 58 B.C. See note on 2, l. 2; here *et* is omitted.

7. 2. **nostram**: = *Romanam*. See note on 1, l. 3.

2. **urbe**: *urbs* is Rome, the city *par excellence*, unless otherwise stated. This was in March, 58 B.C. Caesar did not go at once to his province, but remained near Rome three months to influence and watch politics there.

3. **quam maximis potest itineribus.** See note on 3, l. 3; 'with the utmost possible speed.' Plutarch (*Caes.* xvii.) tells us that Caesar reached Geneva in eight days, and Suetonius (*Div. Iul.* 57) relates that he used to travel 100 Roman miles a day.

3. **Galliam ulteriorem.** See Vocab. **Gallia** for its extent. Of course, in March 58 B.C., only the Province and the land of the Allobroges were subject to Rome.

4. **ad Genavam**: not 'to,' but 'to the neighbourhood of.' **Ad** is properly to the *outside* of; **in**, to the *inside* of. In the case of towns and small islands, 'to,' with a verb of motion, is expressed by simple accusative without preposition. See also note on 5, l. 7, 'domum.'

4. **Provinciae . . . imperat**: see Vocab. **impero**, 4, for its use with direct and indirect object; 'to lay a command (*aliquid*) upon one (*alicui*).

6. **legio una**: the 10th.

7. **ad Genavam**: *at* G., there being no verb of motion.

7. **iubet**: not co-ordinated with *imperat*; asyndeton to express the urgency of the occasion.

8. **certiores facti sunt.** See Vocab. **certus.**

9. **legationis**: collective subst. = the legati.

11. **qui dicerent**: purpose.

13. **nullum**: 'none' emphatic. In Latin emphasis is gained by

**moving a word from its natural place.** So *vix* in 6, l. 3. The natural place of *nullum* is just before *aliud*.

13. **rogare**: supply subject *se*.

14. **L. Cassium.** In 107 B.C. the Helvetii, perhaps 'stimulated by the example of the Cimbri,' attempted to find a new home in the West of Gaul. The Roman army, under the consul Lucius Cassius Longinus, was all but annihilated by the Tigurini, one of the four Helvetian Cantons, and the survivors were compelled to pass under the yoke in token of defeat. (See Mommsen, *H. R.* iii. 182.)

16. **iugum**: two spears stuck upright in the ground with a third tied across the top formed the 'yoke' under which defeated soldiers were made to pass 'like cattle.'

17. **data facultate**: 'if permission were granted,' conditional force of participle.

20. **dum . . . convenirent**: 'till . . . could assemble.' The subjunctive is used because Caesar's **purpose** was to give sufficient time. When no purpose is implied, and only time is meant, the indicative is the natural mood to use.

21. **diem**: 'time,' evidently not 'a day.'

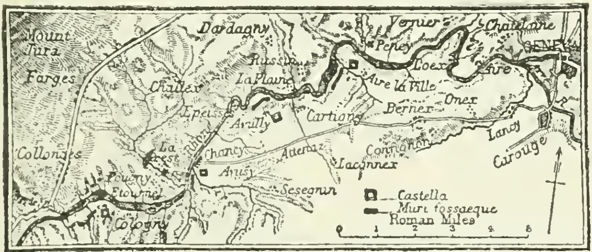
22. **ad Idus Apriles**: 'by the Ides of April.' Apr. 13th. For this force of 'ad' cf. Cic. *Ad Att.* i. 13, 'nos hic te ad mensem Ianuarium expectamus,' 'by January.' See *R. L. P.* p. 216, for Roman Calendar.

22. **reverterentur**: subjunctive because an **indirect command.** In Oratio Recta, 'If you want anything, come back'—put this into Latin.

8. 1. **ea legione**: the 10th.

1. **ea legione militibusque**: **instrumental ablatives.** Troops are by Caesar regarded as instruments (instrumental abl.), not as personal agents ($a$ + abl.), with passive verbs.

3. **influit.** It is not correct to describe the Lake of Geneva as flowing into the Rhône; rather the Rhône flows through the lake.



Stanford's Geograph' Estab^t

**Fortification of the Rhône Valley.**

4. **milia passuum xix.** It is nineteen Roman miles from the W. end of the Lake of Geneva to the Pas-de-l'Ecluse following the course of the Rhône (see note on 6, l. 6.). The Helvetii wanted to cross to the S. side of the river. Nearly all the way the banks were naturally steep enough to bar theirpassage. But at four or five points the banks were

lower and could be scaled. Caesar merely strengthened these weak spots by building forts (*castella*) and a wall and trench (*muri fossaeque*). He had thus made the whole nineteen miles impregnable. The Helvetii were foiled, and had to fall back on the difficult route through Sequanian territory.

5. **sedecim**: the height to which Caesar brought wall and trench where necessary to construct them.

6. **disponit**: 'posts at intervals' (*dis-*)—*i.e.* at the castella.

6. **disponit, communit, negat, ostendit**: are **Historic Presents**. This use of a present for a past tense makes a narrative more vivid, as though the events were occurring under the reader's eyes.

7. **castella**: 'redoubts,' to guard important points. There were probably five—one near Geneva, and four as shown on the map.

7. **quo**: with comparative and subj. used to express purpose (*quo . . . possit*).

7. **se invito**: abl. abs. *Se = Caesare*, as the sense shows. 'Against his will.'

7. **communit, quo possit, conarentur.** If a verb in Historic Present (*communit*) has subordinate clauses dependent on it, it may be treated as a past tense or as a present, in which case it can be followed by a present subjunctive (*possit*). If such a subjunctive present has itself a subjunctive dependent on it, the latter will often be imperfect (*conarentur*). Compare 16, l. 16, *accusat*, *sublevetur*, *posset*.

8. **ea dies**: f. of an appointed time. See note on 6, l. 16.

10. **reverterunt.** Caesar uses the active form for perfect stem tenses of this verb, but the deponent form for other tenses. Cf. 31, l. 2.

11. **ulli**: generally an adjective, here a substantive. It is properly only used in negative sentences (*negat*).

12. **ea spe disiecti**: 'disappointed in this hope'—*i.e.* of Caesar's consent.

13. **navibus iunctis**: *i.e.* on a bridge of boats.

14. **vadis**: cf. 6, l. 9.

15. **noctu**: adv. 'by night,' is really abl. of an obsolete form of *nox*. Cf. *diu* in *interdiu*.

15. **si . . . possent**: we may translate 'to see whether,' 'to try if,' **though the clause is not an indirect question.** It is really an ordinary conditional clause, the apodosis of which is omitted or absorbed in the principal verb (Roby, 1754): *e.g.* 'they made the attempt, *intending to make good use of the opportunity*, if they found it possible, &c.' Cf. *B. G.* ii. 9.

16. **munitione**: the whole defensive work of which the *murus*, *fossa*, and *castella* were the details.

16. **concursu**: the running up of the Roman soldiers to threatened points. *Concursus* and *concurrere* are specially used of conflict at close quarters.

9. 1. **Sequanis invitis**: abl. abs. with conditional force.

2. **angustias**: narrowness. See 6, l. 2, for description of place.

3. **sua sponte**: 'unaided.' See note on 14, l. 3.

4. **eo deprecatore**: abl. abs.

8. **novis rebus studebat**: 'was eager for a revolution.' See Vocab. res for phrases.

10. **habere obstrictas**: 'to *keep* them under an obligation'; not quite the same as *obstrinxisse*. This **analytical perfect** emphasises the lasting effect of the action of the verb; sometimes, as in 15, l. 5, its meaning can scarcely be distinguished from that of the ordinary perfect. It is found in Plautus and Terence, and was probably common in the colloquial language, and ultimately gave us the analytical perfect we find in French and other languages derived from Latin (*j'ai reçu*, &c.).

12. **dent**: *i.e.* the Sequani and Helvetii, which follow in partitive apposition.

10. 1. **renuntiatur**: 'news is brought back'—impersonal.

1. **Helvetiis esse in animo**: 'that the Helvetii intend.' See Vocab. **animus.**

2. **Santonum.** Unless this is contracted for *Santonorum*, we have the word declined in 3rd decl. here and in 2nd, 11, l. 17, *Santonos*. But such variations in the declension of the Latinised forms of Celtic names are not surprising. See Vocab. for their position.

7. **frumentariis**: corn-growing; not as in 23, l. 7, &c.

9. **Italiam**: *i.e.* Cisalpine Gaul, which was geographically, but not politically, part of Italy.

9. **magnis itineribus**: 'with great speed.' See note on 7, l. 3. When an army is marching we translate, 'by forced marches.'

10. **duas legiones**: the 11th and 12th.

10. **conscribit**: 'enrolls,' literally, 'writes their names *all together* on the roll,' hence our 'conscription.' Point out several Historic Presents in the chapter besides *conscribit*.

10. **tres**: the 7th, 8th, and 9th.

11. **Aquileia.** A strong fortress near the head of the Adriatic Sea to protect that frontier of Italy from Noricans and Illyrians. Attila destroyed it in 452 A.D., and the inhabitants fled to the lagoons and founded Venice.

14. **Ceutrones, Graioceli, Caturiges.** Celtic tribes living among the Alps on the east frontier of the Province. The Graioceli lived near Mont Cenis in the Graian Alps, and their town was **Ocelum.**

14. **locis sup. occup.**: abl. abs.; **itinere**, abl. of separation, dependent on *prohibere*.

15. **compluribus**: goes with **proeliis**; **his** (these tribes) with **pulsis**, abl. abs.

17. **extremum**: supply *oppidum*; or, it may be neuter adj. used substantivally, 'the furthest limit.'

20. **hi sunt . . . primi**: the Segusiavi lay immediately W. of the confluence of the Rhône and Saône.

11. 3. **populabantur**: 'were busy ravaging.' Give the imperfect its full force.

5. **rogatum**: the so-called Supine in *-um* used with a verb of motion to express purpose. It is the accusative of a verbal noun; if transitive, it takes a direct object (*e.g. auxilium*). See note on 3, l. 26.

5. **ita se . . . meritos esse**: 'had behaved so loyally towards.' Oratio Obliqua, because *mittunt rogatum* implies speaking.

The Aeduans were a powerful clan of Central Gaul (Celtica), whose

capital was Bibracte. They were at the head of a league of tribes which strove with a rival league under the Arverni, and later the Sequani, for the leadership of Gaul. From 121 B.C. they were the faithful allies of Rome, though in 58 B.C. there was a strong anti-Roman party among them headed by Dumnorix. In 52 B.C. the whole tribe joined the revolt under Vercingetorix.

7. **eorum.** *Eum*, not *se*, is regularly used in clauses expressing a **consequence** to refer to the subject of the principal verb (Roby, 2267, note); *se*, not *eum*, would have been correct had the clause expressed **purpose**. See note on 5, l. 11.

8. **debuerint**: perfect subj. Contrast the tenses used in *debui hoc facere* and 'I ought *to have done* this.'

11. **depopulatis**: passive, though the verb is deponent. The past participle of at least sixty deponents can be used passively—*e.g. imitatus, sortitus, testatus, veneratus*, and *conata* in 3, l. 26.

12. **Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum.** The main part of the tribe lived S. of the Rhône; a few spread out to the N. side (*trans*).

13. **possessiones**: 'landed property.' For **vicus** see note on 5, l. 3.

15. **reliqui**: partitive genitive dependent on *nihil*.

15. **quibus rebus**: see 1, l. 12, for the co-ordinative use of the relative.

16. **dum . . . pervenirent**: 'till the Helvetii could reach.' Caesar did not intend that they should reach. See note on 7, l. 20.

16. **fortunis.** 'Goods,' property,' 'possessions,' is a frequent meaning of the plural of *fortuna*.

12. 1. **Arar**: m., in apposition to the subject, *flumen*, n., with which *quod* agrees.

2. **incredibili lenitate**: abl. of quality, with epithet.

4. **transibant**: "were engaged in crossing,' as in 11, l. 3. The Helvetii crossed the Saône between Trévoux and Villefranche (14–17 miles N.W. of Lyon). Caesar's camp was near the confluence of the Saône and Rhône.

5. **exploratores**: see Intr. § 70.

5. **tres partes**: 'three quarters': so *duae partes*, $\frac{2}{3}$; *quinque partes*, $\frac{5}{6}$. Fractions are thus expressed in Latin whenever the numerator is one less than the denominator.

6. **traduxisse.** *Helvetios* is subject, and there are two objects, (1) **partes**, the direct object, (2) **flumen**, depending on the force of *trans*. If the sentence is turned round passively, *partes* becomes subject, and *flumen* remains as before.

6. **quartam partem**: 'one-fourth.' So fractions are expressed when the numerator is one.

7. **citra**: *i.e.* on the left or E. bank.

7. **de tertia vigilia**: 'in the course of the third watch'—*i.e.* between midnight and 3 A.M. See Intr. § 64. Of course, the length of a watch varied with the time of year.

12. **pagus**: a district or canton; here the inhabitants.

17. **L. Cassium**: see note on 7, l. 14.

22. **quae pars, ea.** Note the emphatic position of the demonstrative. 'The very division which . . . , was the first to pay the penalty.'

25. **qua in re**: co-ordinative use of relative.

28. **soceri**: 'father-in-law.' In 59 B.C. Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of L. Calpurnius Piso. L. Calpurnius Piso, grandfather of the latter, served as a *legatus* under the consul L. Cassius Longinus in 107 B.C., and fell in battle.

13. 2. **in Arare**: 'over the Saône.'

2. **pontem faciendum curat**: 'orders a bridge to be built'; 'to take care about something to be done' is to see that it is done. This idiomatic use of *curo* with gerundive occurs again in 19, l. 3.

2. **curat, posset**: the Historic Present (*curat*) may have a dependent subjunctive in a primary or a secondary tense (*posset*).

4. **aegerrime, uno die.** The Helvetii were not engineers enough to build a bridge, and had to improvise a bridge of boats. For the Roman skill see Intr. § 45.

5. **ut flumen transirent**: substantival clause in apposition to *id*.

7. **Divico**: must have been at least 80 years old, as he commanded against the Romans forty-nine years before.

9. **si . . . faceret, ituros esse**: would be in direct speech *si . . . faciet, ibunt*: for the rules of the conditional sentence in Oratio Obliqua, see *R. L. P.* p. 194.

11. **sin**: = *si . . . ne*, 'if not,' 'if on the contrary,' 'but if'; it introduces an alternative supposition negativing the former.

12. **reminisceretur**: indirect command: give the Latin for the corresponding direct command. Certain verbs of remembering and forgetting, *reminiscor, memini, obliviscor*, take their object in the genitive; also often in the accusative.

12. **veteris**: 'ancient'; 107 B.C.

12. **incommodi**: 'reverse,' 'mishap,' a mild word for what was called in 12, l. 23 'a signal disaster': **litotes** this toning down is called.

14. **quod . . . adortus esset**: 'as for his attacking.' This kind of adverbial clause often serves to define the extent or scope of the matter under discussion. If an acknowledged fact is so introduced, *quod* takes the indicative: if a supposed fact, the subjunctive. Here the fact is acknowledged, but the subjunctive is due to Oratio Obliqua.

From this use of *quod*, 'with regard to which,' is probably derived its common meaning of 'because.'

Contrast the meanings of **adorior** and **aggredior** in the Vocab.

15. **suis**: refers to the Helvetii who had already crossed.

16. **suae**: refers to Caesar.

16. **tribueret**: 'plume himself upon,' 'swagger about.'

17. **ipsos**: refers to Helvetii. This is quite a regular use of *ipse* for *se* to mark the antithesis to *suae*, which refers to a different subject. (Kennedy, *P. S. Lat. Gramm.* § 236, 2.)

19. **quare**: 'therefore.' Co-ordinative use of relative word.

19. **ne committeret**: indirect command; *ne commiseris* in Oratio Recta.

14. 1. **his**: *i.e.* the Helvetian envoys. The person receiving the answer goes into the dative: for the words answered, *ad* + acc. is used. Cf. 44, l. 1, *ad postulata . . . respondit.*

1. **eo**: abl. of measure of difference, with comparative.

1. **dubitationis**: 'hesitation'; partitive genitive dependent on *minus*.

2. **quod . . . teneret**: subjunctive because in a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua (suboblique) in direct speech 'quod teneo.'

3. **ferre**: supply subject *se*, from *sibi*.

4. **quo minus**: is correlative to *eo minus*, and not the conjunction *quominus* used with verbs of hindering or preventing. (See note on 47, l. 7.) *Quo* is here the abl. of measure of difference, like *eo*.

4. **accidissent**: supply subject, *eae res*.

4. **qui si**: 'for if he.' This co-ordinating use of the relative is common with *si*, *cum*, &c.

5. **non fuisse difficile**: 'it would not have been difficult.' Compare the Latin 'longum *est*,' 'it *would be* tedious.'

6. **eo, quod**: 'by the fact that.'

8. **quod si**: 'but if'; *quod* simply serves to co-ordinate with preceding sentence.

9. **num . . . memoriam deponere posse**: 'can I forget?' 'num . . . possum' in Oratio Recta: questions in first and third persons are chiefly **rhetorical** (not asked for information), and are expressed in **accusative and infinitive** in Oratio Obliqua: only genuine questions, in second person, become indirect questions with verb in the **subjunctive**.

12. **quod . . . gloriarentur, admirarentur**: 'as for their boasting' &c., see 13, l. 14.

13. **se impune iniurias tulisse**: '(as for their surprise) that they had committed these outrages with impunity.' For the phrase, cf. Ov. *Met* 2, 474, 'haud impune feres.'

14. **consuesse**: 'are wont.' *Consuescere* is inceptive, 'to *become* accustomed'; *consuesse* 'to *be* accustomed.' So *nosco*, 'I become acquainted with'; *novi*, 'I know.' *Consuevi* and *novi*, perfect in form, are in some respects present in meaning.

15. **quo**: with comparative and subjunctive to express purpose.

16. **doleant, velint**: present tense because *a general truth* is stated. The verbs in subordinate clauses in Oratio Obliqua are normally in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; the present subjunctive is used for some special reason as here, or for the sake of variety in long passages of reported speech.

17. **his**: antecedent of *quos*. Note its emphatic position, and cf. note on 12, l. 22.

17. **secundiores res**: 'greater prosperity.' See Vocab. **res** for some phrases.

18. **cum**: concessive force, 'although,' as is shown by *tamen* following. *Cum* = 'although' always takes subjunctive in classical Latin.

20. **Aeduis**: like *Allobrogibus*, dative of remoter object with *satisfaciant*.

15. 2. **movent**: *i.e.* the Helvetii.

5. **coactum habebat**: 'had-in-his-service raised-from.' See on 9, l. 10. But the analytical pluperfect here can scarcely be distinguished from *coëgerat*.

6. **qui videant**: purpose.

7. **faciant**: indirect question.

7. **qui**, and **quo** in l. 12; co-ordinative.

8. **cupidius**: 'too eagerly'; absolute use of the comparative.

8. **novissimum agmen**: 'the rear' of the Helvetii.

9. **alieno**: 'unfavourable.'

11. **pauci**: 'a few of our men.' Here Caesar minimises the reverse; in 18, l. 29, it is called a 'proelium equestre adversum,' 'a cavalry defeat.'

17. **novissimo agmine**: 'with their rear'; instrumental abl. See note on 8, l. 1.

19. **suos**: 'his men'; constant use of the word.

20. **in praesentia** (*tempora*): 'for the present.' The sing. *in praesens* is more common.

21. **dies quindecim**: acc. of duration of time.

22. **nostrum primum** (*agmen*): 'our van.'

23. **quinis, senis**: abl. of comparison. The distributive numerals are appropriate because the interval was the same *each* day.

16. 2. **quod essent polliciti**: 'which, *he maintained*, they had promised.' Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

2. **publice**: 'in the name of the State,' by public authority, officially; not 'publicly,' which is *palam*.

2. **flagitare**: **historical infinitive** is equivalent to an indicative, and takes its subject in the **nominative**. It is used in animated narrative, and is as though the writer hurried along without stopping to think out the number and person of his verb.

3. **frigora**: in plur. 'cold season,' or 'cold climate.' So also in *B. G.* v. 12. Compare *B. G.* v. 24, *siccitates* = dry season.

4. **frumenta**: pl. 'growing corn,' 'crops.'

6. **frumento**: sing. 'grain.'

7. **subvexerat**: 'he had brought *up* the Saône.' 'From below' is a frequent force of *sub* in composition.

9. **diem ex die**: 'day after day.'

9. **ducere**: 'procrastinate,' 'put him off.' Like **dicere**, historical infinitive. See l. 2.

9. **conferri**: 'it was being collected' (from the individual sources).

9. **comportari**: 'it was being transported in bulk.'

10. **adesse**: 'it was there,' 'it had been delivered.' These infinitives in asyndeton well depict the torrent of excuses made by the Aeduans.

10. **se duci**: 'that he was being put off.'

11. **metiri oporteret**: 'he was due to serve out the corn rations to the men.' The regulation allowance was about two pecks (*modii*) per fortnight. The men used to grind the grain for themselves with hand-mills, and make bread or porridge of the meal.

14. **magistratui**: 'magistracy' (the office, abstract); in **17, l. 4**, the magistrates themselves (concrete).

14. **vergobretum**: vergobret, the title of the magistrate, not of his office. This Celtic word = 'judgment-dealer' (Mommsen, *H. R.* iv. 224).

15. **qui creatur annuus**: 'who is appointed for one year.' *Annuus* is a direct secondary predicate. For construction of 'factitive' verbs like *creare*, see *R. L. P.* §§ 187, 206.

16. **necis**: properly, death by violence. Cf. *internecio* in **13, l. 21.**

17. **emi posset**: supply subject, *frumentum*. *Accusat* is historic present; for tenses see note on 8, l. 7.

18. **tam propinquis hostibus**: 'when the enemy were so close at hand'; abl. abs.

19. **magna ex parte**: 'to a great extent.'

17. 2. **quod tacuerat**: 'what he had kept silence about,' transitive; the verb is generally intransitive, 'to keep silence.'

2. **esse nonnullos**: meaning Dumnorix.

3. **privatim**: contrast with 'ipsi magistratus,' 'though in a private station.'

6. **praestare**: 'it was better'; 'praestare . . . sint erepturi' is the 'seditiosa oratio.'

7. **principatum**: 'the hegemony,' chief power among the rival clans. For the same word applied to an individual see note on 3, l. 23.

7. **Gallorum . . . perferre**: this clause is substantival, the subject of *praestare*.

8. **dubitare**: supply subject, *se* = the anti-Roman Aeduans, this being part of the 'seditiosa oratio.'

10. **Aeduis**: dative of disadvantage (remoter object) with 'sint erepturi.'

11. **quaeque**: not from *quisque*, 'each,' but = *quae* + *que*.

12. **a se**: *i.e.* the speaker, Liscus.

12. **quin etiam**: 'nay, even,' to introduce some striking statement or climax.

13. **quod . . . . enuntiarit**: 'as for his disclosing.' See note on 13, l. 14.

13. **necessaria re coactus**: 'of necessity,' compelled by the necessities of the case. This is a regular phrase, found, *e.g.*, Caes. *B. C.* i. 40. See Vocab. **res**.

15. **tacuisse**: 'had kept silence.' See note on l. 2.

18. 3. **iactari**: 'to be discussed.'

2. **pluribus praesentibus**: abl. abs., 'in the presence of many witnesses.'

4. **dimittit**: historic present; point out others in the chapter. See note on 8, l. 6.

7. **ipsum esse Dumnorigem**: 'it was *indeed* Dumnorix;' *ipse* is an 'adjective of emphasis.'

7. **summa audacia**: abl. of quality, with epithet.

9. **cupidum rerum novarum**: 'eager for a revolution.' Cf. 9, l. 8. See Vocab. **res**.

9. **complures annos**: accusative of duration of time—answering question 'How long?'

9. **portoria**: 'customs,' duties on exports and imports.

10. **vectigalia**: 'taxes,' the general word for State revenues.

11. **redempta habere**: 'he had held the contract for farming . . . . which he had purchased at a low price.' For the analytical perfect see on 9, l. 10. At Rome the taxes of a province were often sold by auction to the highest bidder. Capitalists bought them for a sum down, and by means of their agents, the Publicani, extorted all they could from the provincials, so as to make as much as possible out of the transaction. It seems as though this Roman system prevailed in some of the Gallic States.

11. **contra liceri**: 'to bid against him.'

12. **nemo**: 'not a creature'; emphatic position. See note on 7, l. 13.

12. **rem familiarem**: 'his substance.'

15. **domi**: 'at home,' *i.e.* among the Aeduans. The word is a relic of the old locative case.

16. **largiter posse**: 'had considerable influence.' Cf. 3, l. 29, for the absolute use of *posse*. *Large* is a more classical form of the adverb than *largiter*, which is found most frequently in Plautus—*i.e.* in colloquial Latin.

18. **collocasse**: 'had given in marriage'—contracted for *collocavisse*.

18. **illic**: there, *i.e.* 'of that clan,' the Bituriges.

19. **sororem**: 'half-sister,' **ex matre**, 'on his mother's side.'

20. **nuptum**: Supine in *-um*; used because of the motion (sending to a new home) implied in *collocare*. See l. 18 for this verb without *nuptum*.

20. **favere et cupere Helvetiis**: 'he was favourable and well disposed to the Helvetii.' A not very common use of *cupio* with the dative of advantage: probably it is influenced by *favere*.

21. **affinitatem**: 'connection;' *affines* are connections by marriage as opposed to blood relations.

22. **suo nomine**: 'on his own account.'

25. **si quid accidat**: 'should anything befall;' a euphemism for 'meet with disaster.' 'Any' is expressed by *quis*, *quid*, after *si*, *ne*, *num*.

26. **imperio populi Romani**: 'under the dominion of . . .'; the abl. is one of attendant circumstances, and has here a conditional force 'should they fall under,' &c.

28. **in quaerendo**: 'in the course of his inquiries.'

29. **quod proelium**: 'with regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought'; *quod* as in 13, l. 14.

29. **proelium equestre**: forms a single idea, 'cavalry fight'; there is therefore no real violation of the rule which requires that two epithets qualifying the same noun shall be co-ordinated.

32. **auxilio**: 'to the assistance of Caesar.' A predicative dative expressing purpose. It is usually (1) found with part of *sum*—here, however, with a verb of motion, *miserat*; (2) in combination with a dative of the person benefited, *Caesari*; (3) dative of an abstract noun.

19. 1. **cum . . . accederent**: 'since these suspicions were confirmed by most indubitable facts (*res*).' *Cum* = 'since,' 'seeing that,' *always* has its verb in the subjunctive in *all* tenses; it is almost the only conjunction of cause that *necessarily* takes the subjunctive.

2. **quod . . . traduxisset**, &c.: 'viz. that.' These four clauses introduced by *quod* are substantival in apposition to *res*. Note the emphasis obtained by the repetition (anaphora) of the *quod* clauses. Supply 'Dumnorix' as subject of *traduxisset*.

3. **obsides . . . dandos curasset**: 'had brought about an exchange of hostages.' Cf. 13, l. 2.

4. **iniussu**: 'without orders from himself (Caesar) and the State (Aeduan).' This is a defective noun found only in abl. sing., and used with a genitive or equivalent possessive adjective.

5. **inscientibus ipsis**: 'without their knowledge'; abl. abs. *ipsis* = Caesar and the Aeduans.

6. **magistratu**: *i.e.* the vergobret, Liscus. See note on 16, l. 14.

6. **causae**: partitive genitive, dependent on *satis*.

7. **animadvertere in aliquem**: to take official notice of a crime; hence 'to punish.' See note on 24, l. 1.

9. **unum**: 'one thing.'

9. **quod . . . cognoverat**: 'the fact that he was aware of'; in apposition to *unum*.

10. **in se**: 'towards himself.' See Vocab. **in**, 2, iii.

12. **supplicio**: the word means (1) supplication (religious), (2) punishment (capital); in both cases the meaning is derived from the notion of kneeling (*sub*, *plico*).

13. **prius, quam . . . conaretur**: 'before he attempted to take any steps.' The subjunctive is due to the **implied purpose** of Caesar to avoid hasty action. Cf. 53, l. 2.

15. **per C. V. Troucillum**: 'by the aid of C. V. T.' *Per* with accusative expresses, not the (direct) agent by whom, but the (secondary agent) intermediary by whose help. Troucillus acted as interpreter.

16. **principem**: 'a distinguished citizen.' The word implies merely general prominence, and does not refer to any official position. Cf. note on 3, l. 23.

17. **summam fidem**: 'the fullest confidence.' *Fidem habere* = *fidere*, and, like it, governs a dative, *cui*.

18. **simul**: does not co-ordinate *colloquitur* and *commonefacit*, but *commonefacit*, *et ostendit*.

18. **ipso**: Divitiaco: abl. abs., 'in the presence of D.'

20. **apud se**: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.'

21. **eius**: *i.e.* Divitiaci; 'without hurting his feelings.' The awkwardness of two genitives is explained by the fact that *offensio animi* is really one idea.

22. **vel . . . vel**: 'either . . . or . . . ,' is used where it does not matter which of the alternatives you choose. (It is properly an old imperative of *volo*, 'take your choice.')

22. **ipse**: *i.e.* Caesar; **eo**: Dumnorix.

22. **causa cognita**: abl. abs.

22. **statuat**: 'pass sentence.'

**20.** 2. **in fratrem**: 'against his brother.' For the same sense of *in* cf. 19, l. 7, *animadvertere in aliquem*.

3. **scire se**: the Oratio Obliqua depends on the speech implied in *obsecrare*.

3. **illa**: 'those charges'—*i.e.* those made in ch. 18.

3. **ex eo**: *i.e.* from his brother, Dumnorix.

4. **ipse**: *i.e.* Divitiacus, the speaker.

5. **domi**: at home—*i.e.* among the Aeduans.

5. **ille**: Dumnorix.

6. **per se**: 'by his (Divitiacus's) help.'

6. **crevisset**: 'had grown great'; *ille* to be supplied as subject.

8. **gratiam**: i.e. *suam*: 'his (Divitiacus's) influence.'

9. **uteretur**: co-ordinated with *crevisset* by *quibus* (= *et eis*), both being in subordinate clauses (causal) in Oratio Obliqua.

9. **fraterno** : *for* his brother—*i.e.* equivalent to an objective genitive.

11. **gravius** : 'somewhat severe.' The comparative is used absolutely : 'should any at all stern measures.'

11. **ipse** : Divitiacus. **eum** : Caesar. **sua** : *i.e.* Divitiacus's.

13. **qua ex re futurum (esse) uti . . . averterentur** : 'and the result of this would be that,' &c. : *qua = et ea* ; hence the infinitive *futurum esse.* In Oratio Obliqua a clause introduced by a relative used merely to co-ordinate does not take its verb in the subjunctive, but in the infinitive, because it is not really subordinate.

16. **rogat . . . faciat.** *Ut* is often omitted with the jussive subjunctive used with verbs of commanding or entreating, such as *rogo* and *iubeo.*

16. **tanti** : 'of so great weight' ; genitive of price. This is really a locative, and only certain words, such as *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *parvi*, are so used ; the abl. of price is used for all other words.

17. **rei publicae iniuriam** : 'the injury done (*i.e.* by Dumnorix) to the State (objective genitive).'

18. **suum** : 'his own' (Caesar's). **eius** : *i.e.* of Divitiacus.

18. **voluntati** : 'out of regard for his wishes and entreaties he would pardon' (lit. make a present of to ; remit).

19. **vocat, adhibet, &c.** : in asyndeton, Caesar's graphic way of relating the various steps he took.

19. **quae, quae, quae** : this repetition of words at the beginning of successive clauses is called **epanaphora.**

20. **intellegat** : knows.

22. **suspiciones** : perhaps 'suspicious conduct' ; that which could cause suspicions.

22. **Divitiaco** : 'for the sake of D.' Cf. l. 18, *voluntati.*

**21.** 2. **milia passuum . . . octo** : acc. of distance answering the question 'How far off ?' For this the abl. is more correct, as in 48, l. 1. This accusative properly expresses space traversed, and is thence loosely transferred to the goal of the motion.

4. **qui cognoscerent** : 'to reconnoitre' ; subj. with relative to express purpose ; supply an object to *misit.*

4. **renuntiatum est** : 'news was brought back.' Impersonal use of passive.

5. **de tertia vigilia** : 'in the course of the third watch'—*i.e.* (roughly) between midnight and 3 A.M. See Intr. § 64.

6. **legatum pro praetore.** See Intro. § 50.

7. **cognoverant** : 'knew' (*not* 'had known'). Verbs in *-sco* are inceptive (*i.e.* they mean 'to begin to—know' &c.) in the present stem ; in the perfect stem the action is no longer beginning, but complete—'I know, knew,' &c.

8. **sui consilii** : partitive genitive dependent on *quid.* 'What his plan was.' Much the same as *suum consilium*, except that the genitive rather implies that this was only a portion of Caesar's general plan.

11. **qui . . . habebatur** : 'who was looked upon as a most capable officer.' The events of ch. 22 must have considerably damaged his reputation.

12. **Sullae** : one of the ablest soldiers Rome ever produced. See Vocab.

12. **M. Crassi**: M. Licinius Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, and one of the triumvirs of 60 B.C. In 71 B.C. he defeated and slew Spartacus: the reference is here probably to this campaign. But he was no soldier, and, mismanaging the campaign against the Parthians, was defeated and slain 53 B.C.

**22.** 1. **summus mons**: 'the top of the mountain.' Some Latin adjectives indicate a part of the substantive they qualify (**partitive attributes**). Other adjectives frequently used in this idiomatic way are: *primus*, *medius*, *imus*, *extremus*.

2. **teneretur, abesset, cognitus esset**: all depend on *cum*. *Cum* = 'when,' *i.e.* used in a purely temporal sense, naturally takes the indicative: but if the tense is imperfect or pluperfect, the subjunctive is used.

2. **mille et quingentis passibus**: is abl. expressing distance at which (cf. 21. l. 2); it is not abl. of comparison after *longius*. The adverb *amplius* is used in the same way without influencing the construction, as though merely parenthetical.

5. **equo admisso**: 'at full gallop'; abl. abs. See Vocab.

6. **voluerit**: supply subject, *Caesar*. What would this be in Oratio Recta?

7. **Gallicis armis atque insignibus**: 'Gallic arms and accoutrements.' The latter word probably refers to the badges on the officers' helmets. *Atque* often adds the more important word.

10. **ipsius**: 'his own,' *i.e.* Caesar's and not Labienus's.

11. **visae**: 'seen.'

13. **multo die**: 'when the day was well advanced.' Cf. 26, l. 7.

16. **pro viso**: 'had reported to him (Caesar) as seen, what he had not seen.'

17. **milia passuum tria**. See note on 21, l. 2.

**23.** 1. **postridie eius diei**: the adv. *postridie* (on the next day) is strengthened, almost superfluously, by *eius diei*.

2. **metiri**: supply subject, *Caesarem*. Cf. 16, l. 11. and see Intr. § 62 for the ration of corn.

5. **copiosissimo**: 'most abundantly provided.' The termination *-osus* = 'full of,' *i.e.* of *copia*, abundance.

6. **aberat**: *i.e.* Caesar.

6. **milibus passuum xviii**: abl. of distance at which. Cf. 22, l. 2.

7. **rei frumentariae prospiciendum esse**: 'that he ought to make provision for a supply of corn.' See **res** in Vocab.

10. **ire contendit**: Caesar often uses *contendo* with an infinitive; *e.g. ire, proficisci, reverti*—'make haste to go, set out, return, &c.'

11. **fugitivos**: 'runaway slaves,' not 'deserters,' for which *transfugas* or *perfugas* is the word. Cf. *servos* in 27 l. 10.

11. **decurionis**: for this officer see Intr. § 54.

13. **seu (sive) . . . seu (sive)**: 'whether . . . or,' introduce alternative conditions (= si-ve); but they are more often mere disjunctives.

14. **quod . . . existimarent, confiderent**: subjunctive because Caesar does not personally vouch for the reasons that influenced the Helvetii: so, too, in **commisissent**, he makes the Helvetii put their own construction upon the Roman refusal to fight.

16. **eo magis**: 'all the more because'; *eo*, abl. of measure of difference with a comparative.

19. **eo quod**: 'for this reason because'; *eo*, abl. of cause.

20. **intercludi posse**: supply subj. *Romanos*.

23. **a novissimo agmine**: '*on* the rear.' Cf. 1, l. 19, for this force of *a*.

24. 1. **animum advertit**: direct the attention to, *i.e.* 'observe, notice.' The phrase is treated as a single verb with direct object **id**; indeed it is often written as one word, **animadvertere**, *e.g.* 32, l. 3, and 40, l. 1; for another meaning see 19, l. 7.

2. **subducit**: 'leads *up* to.' *Sub* in composition often implies motion from lower to higher ground.

2. **qui sustineret**: purpose.

4. **in colle medio**: 'half-way up the hill.' See note on 22, l. 1, for other partitive attributes.

5. **triplicem aciem.** See Intr. § 47.

6. **legionum quattuor veteranarum**: *i.e.* the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th, which Caesar received on entering on his province.

9. **quas proxime conscripserat.** See note on 10, l. 10.

11. **auxilia**: auxiliary forces. See Intr. § 44.

14. **sarcinas**: the 'packs' carried by soldiers on the march. See Intr. § 61.

17. **impedimenta**: the heavy baggage. See Intr. § 60.

18. **ipsi**: *i.e.* without their waggons and baggage.

18. **confertissima acie**: abl. of the instrument, to be taken with *reiecto*; 'driven back by their dense array.' For *confertissima* see note on 3, l. 24.

19. **reiecto equitatu, phalange facta.** Caesar often places two abls. absolute side by side without *et*; in such cases the action of the first paves the way for that of the second. The repulse of the Roman cavalry made it possible for the Helvetii to form their phalanx.

20. **successerunt**: 'advanced up to': *sub* = from lower ground. See plan and description on p. 47. The Romans were on the side of the hill.

25. 1. **suo**: *i.e. equo*.

1. **omnium**: *i.e.* of his officers.

3. **spem fugae**: for Caesar's carpet-knights. See Intr. § 51. Cf. the account of the panic at Vesontio in Ch. 39.

4. **pilis missis.** See Intr. § 58. **Superiore.** See note on 24, l. 20.

5. **ea**: *i.e.* the phalanx.

6. **magno . . . impedimento**: predicative dative.

6. **Gallis**: 'the Celts,' *i.e.* the Helvetii: dative of disadvantage. 'The Celts were greatly hindered by the fact that . . . '

7. **quod . . . poterant**: substantival clause subject of *erat*.

7. **pluribus . . . scutis . . . transfixis et colligatis**: abl. absolute.

9. **ferrum se inflexisset**: the head of the *pilum* was of soft iron. See Intr. § 58.

9. **sinistra**: *i.e.* the shield arm, which was hampered by the locking together of the shields, which, owing to the compactness of the phalanx, overlapped so that the Roman pikes pierced more than one at a time.

10. **multi ut**: note the emphatic position of *multi*.

11. **iactato bracchio**: 'having tossed about their arm (*i.e.* the left one),' to free themselves.

12. **nudo**: 'unprotected,' *i.e.* without shield.

14. **pedem referre**: 'to give ground'; **se recipere**, 'to retreat.'

15. **mille passuum**: *mille* is here a substantive, it is more often an adjective; *milia* is always a substantive.

21. **novissimis praesidio erant**: 'guarded the rear.' *Nov.* and *pr.* datives of disadvantage and predicative respectively.

22. **ex itinere**: 'broke off their march to attack and outflank our men on the undefended flank' (*i.e.* the right flank, the shield side being the left).

24. **id**: 'this manœuvre.'

26. **instare**: 'advance to the attack.'

28. **conversa signa bipertito intulerunt**: 'wheeled round and advanced in two divisions;' two principal verbs in English. See Vocab. **signum**.

29. **prima et secunda acies, tertia**: in partitive apposition to *Romani*.

30. **victis et summotis**: *i.e.* the broken Helvetian phalanx which had renewed the battle.

31. **ut venientes sustineret**: 'to withstand the attack of the new-comers'; *i.e.* the 15,000 Boii and Tulingi who had hitherto taken no part in the fighting.

**26.** 1. **ancipiti**: 'double' (literally, 'double-headed'); the frequent meaning 'doubtful, critical,' is not so appropriate here. Cf. *bipertito*.

3. **alteri . . . alteri**: *i.e.* the Helvetii . . . the Boii and T.

5. **cum . . . pugnatum sit**: '*though* the battle raged.' *Cum* concessive always takes the subjunctive. *Pugno* being intransitive is only used in the passive impersonally.

5. **hora septima**: *i.e.* about one hour after noon. Sunrise to noon = hours 1–6; noon to sunset = hours 6–12. Of course the length of the hour varied with the time of year.

6. **aversum hostem**: 'the back of an enemy,' 'the enemy in flight.'

7. **ad multam noctem**: 'till far into the night.' See note on 22, l. 13.

8. **pro vallo carros obiecerant**: 'had thrown up a barricade of waggons,' like a Boer laager in South Africa. Cf. 51, l. 21.

9. **venientes**: 'as they came up.'

10. **raedas**: some editors read *rotas*, with the MSS.

10. **mataras, tragulas**: native javelins, the former hurled by hand, the latter slung by means of a leathern thong.

13. **ibi**: *i.e.* in the Helvetian camp.

14. **captus**. The predicate, though referring to all, is often found agreeing with the *nearest* member of a composite subject. Cf. 46, l. 15, where **iniectum** agrees with the nearest substantive, *studium*.

17. **nullam partem noctis**: acc. of duration of time; *i.e.* they travelled night and day till, three days after the battle, they reached the territory of the Lingones, distant about sixty miles. **quarto**: *i.e.* inclusive of day of battle.

25. **qui si**: 'for if they *did*.' *Qui* = *ei enim*. Cf. 14, l. 4.

26. **se . . . habiturum** (**esse**): 'he would regard them (the Lingones) in the same light as the Helvetii,' *i.e.* as enemies.

**27.** 2. **de deditione**: 'to treat about a surrender.'

2. **qui**: = *at ei.*

6. **atque . . . iussisset**: *i.e.* Caesar. Note the sudden change of subject.

10. **qui . . . perfugissent**: 'which had, *he said*, taken refuge with them'; virtual Oratio Obliqua. Cf. 23, l. 14.

13. **milia . . . perterriti, inducti.** Note the agreement according to sense, not according to grammatical gender. Cf. 29, l. 9.

15. **supplicio afficerentur**: 'they should be executed.'

15. **quod . . . existimarent.** Caesar does not vouch for this being their motive, but mentions it as a conceivable one, hence subjunctive is used; indicative would have meant that Caesar rightly or wrongly asserted it to be the motive.

16. **aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse**: 'could be concealed for a time, or escape notice altogether.'

17. **prima nocte**: 'early in the night'; a partitive attribute. So *prima luce* (22, l. 1) and *multam noctem*, &c.

**28.** 1. **quod** = *id autem.*

2. **his**: antecedent of *quorum*, in emphatic position.

2. **conquirerent,** &c.: supply object *eos*, *i.e.* the 6,000 runaways.

2. **sibi**: 'in his (Caesar's) eyes.' Dative of person judging.

3. **reductos**: 'those that were brought back.' We must suppose that some finally got away.

3. **in hostium numero habuit**: 'he treated as enemies,' *i.e.* put to death, or sold into slavery.

8. **quo . . . tolerarent**: 'wherewith to support'; **quo**, instrumental abl. of the relative used with subjunctive to express purpose.

9. **copiam facerent**: see Vocab. **copia.**

10. **quos**: agrees with the nearest word, *vicos*, though it also refers to *oppida.*

15. **Boios**: is direct object of *collocarent*, and out of place. The word is put first to point the contrast with Helvetii, &c., in l. 5.

16. **egregia virtute**: abl. of quality, as usual with epithet. 'When the Aeduans requested permission to establish the Boii in their own territory, because they were known to be of distinguished valour, he granted it.'

19. **atque ipsi erant**: *atque* or *ac* = 'as,' is used after words of likeness or unlikeness (e.g. *idem*, *par*, *aequus*) to introduce the correlative clause.

**29.** 2. **litteris Graecis confectae**: 'written in Greek characters'; the *language* was Celtic. The Celts had doubtless learnt Greek writing from the traders of the Greek city of Massilia. Cf. 1, l. 8. Caesar tells us (*B. G.* vi. 14) that the Druids habitually used Greek writing. Gallic coins, too, are found with Greek characters stamped on them. See cut on p. 52.

3. **ratio**: 'account, enumeration.'

4. **exisset**: subjunctive in indirect question.

5. **pueri**: 'children.' This is the general word including boys and girls. See **liberi**, in Vocab.

5. **pueri, senes, mulieresque**: nominatives, the subjects of some verb to be supplied from **ratio**—'were enumerated.'

6. **rerum**: 'items,' *i.e.* warriors, children, &c. Kraner reads **rationum**, 'accounts, heads in the reckoning,' which also makes good sense.

9. **summa**: 'sum total.'

9. **summa . . . fuerunt**: agreement according to sense, not according to grammatical number. Cf. note on 27, l. 13.

10. **eorum**: depends on *numerus*.

**30.** 1. **bello Helvetiorum**: 'the war against the Helvetii,' objective genitive. How would it be translated if it were subjective?

2. **Gallia**: here Gaul proper, *i.e.* Celtica; not as in 1, l. 1. Belgium and Aquitania were as yet unaffected by the war.

2. **gratulatum**: 'to offer him their congratulations.' Supine in *-um*; see note on 11, l. 5.

3. **intellegere**. The narrative drops into Oratio Obliqua, depending on the notion of speaking in *gratulatum*.

3. **tametsi**: 'although.' The word nearly always takes an indicative; here the subjunctive is due to the Oratio Obliqua. *Tamen* generally follows in the apodosis.

4. **poenas pro veteribus iniuriis**: 'vengeance for the ancient wrongs.' The reference is to the 'Bellum Cassianum' of 107 B.C., already twice alluded to.

4. **Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani**: 'wrongs inflicted by the H. on the R. people.' Here we have a subjective and objective genitive dependent on the same noun. As usual, the subj. precedes, the obj. follows.

5. **ex usu**: 'to the advantage of.' **Ex**, literally (1) 'from out of,' is naturally used of (2) the source, and thence (3) of the standard by which we estimate, 'in accordance with,' as here.

7. **eo consilio**: to be taken with *uti . . . inferrent*.

7. **florentissimis rebus**: abl. absolute.

10. **copia**: abundance to choose from, 'choice' (here of locality).

15. **ex communi consensu**: 'in accordance with.' Cf. *ex usu*.

16. **iureiurando, ne quis . . . sanxerunt**: 'and by oath solemnly engaged that no one should . . .' *Sancire* implies some solemn undertaking under religious or legal sanction.

17. **quibus mandatum esset**: 'who had been commissioned to do so.' *Nisi quibus* is for *nisi ei, quibus*. The verb is subjunctive because *iureiurando sanxerunt* virtually involves Oratio Obliqua.

**31.** 1. **idem** = *iidem*, nom. pl.

2. **fuerant**: i.e. *apud Caesarem*.

4. **Caesari ad pedes**: 'at Caesar's feet.' *Caesaris* would have been equally good grammatically, but the dative expresses better the appeal to Caesar's sympathy.

5. **non minus, &c.**: the construction slides into Oratio Obliqua with no formal verb of speaking other than that implied in *flentes*, &c.

6. **ne . . . enuntiarentur**: 'to prevent the disclosure of'; substantival clause in apposition to *id*.

9. **locutus est pro his**: 'was their spokesman.'
9. **Galliae totius**: i.e. *Celticae*, as in 30, l. 2.
10. **principatum**: 'leading position, leadership.' Of the two rival leagues, that headed by the Aeduans favoured, the Arvernian opposed, Rome.
12. **potentatu**: 'supremacy, hegemony'; a rare word, only found here in Caesar.
12. **multos annos**: accusative of duration of time, answering the question 'How long?'
12. **factum esse uti . . .**: 'had ended in the . . .'
13. **Germani mercede arcesserentur**: 'Germans being called in to serve for pay.' So in Britain, 500 years later, the Celts under Vortigern paid the Teutons Hengest and Horsa to fight for them, with similar disastrous results. *Mercede* is ablative of price.
15. **cultum**: 'mode of life.' As in 1, l. 7, the outward aspect of civilisation.
15. **copias**: 'resources.'
18. **clientes**: 'vassals,' *i.e.* the smaller clans, who, being unable to stand alone, grouped themselves under the general supremacy of one or other of the leading tribes, such as the Aedui or Arverni.
20. **omnem nobilitatem**, &c. The asyndeton makes the enumeration of their losses more striking, to awaken Caesar's sympathy.
22. **qui**: supply antecedent, *eos.*
23. **hospitio**: 'friendly relations.' The Aeduans had long been allies of Rome, and were the chief centre of Roman influence in Gaul. *Hospitium* was an arrangement for mutual hospitality and good offices between individuals or States.
23. **plurimum potuissent**: absolute use of *possum.* Subjunctive, because the clause is subordinate in Oratio Obliqua.
29. **unum**: 'the only one.' So *unos* in 32, l. 3.
30. **potuerit**. Imperfect or pluperfect is the regular tense for the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in Oratio Obliqua. But sometimes the present or perfect is used (1) for the sake of vividness, just as in narrative the historic present is used; (2) for the sake of variety, especially in clauses expressing consequence; (3) to express a general truth.
31. **se . . . profugisse.** The defeat of the Aeduans at Admagetobriga and the disastrous peace they were compelled to make with the Sequani and Ariovistus probably occurred in 61 B.C. Divitiacus, as head of the Romanising party, was banished and went to Rome to solicit help.
32. **auxilium**: is direct object of the supine *postulatum.*
34. **victoribus**: adj. 'victorious.'
34. **accidisse**: see note on l. 56.
36. **tertiam partem**: one-third. Thus all fractions with numerator 1: so *quarta pars* = $\frac{1}{4}$, in 12, l. 6.
37. **qui esset optimus**: subjunctive because in a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua.
38. **altera**: 'a second.'
40. **quibus . . . pararentur**: subj. with relative to express purpose.

43. **conferendum**. In translating be careful to bring out the fact that Gaul is superior to Germany, not *vice versa*.

44. **hanc, illa**: Gallic and German respectively.

46. **ut**: 'when.' The subj. is due to Oratio Obliqua.

48. **nobilissimi cuiusque**: 'of all the most noble.' A common idiomatic use of the superlative in the singular followed immediately by *quisque*. *Quisque* makes the notion universal; it means 'all—taken individually.'

49. **exempla cruciatusque edere**: 'inflict all kinds of savage punishments and tortures.' The two nouns must not be taken together as a hendiadys, but first we have the general word *exempla*, 'exemplary punishments' (cf. 'to make an example'), and then *cruciatus* specifying what kind of severity.

52. **non posse**. Supply subject *se*, omitted in spite of a change of subject.

52. **nisi si**: used when the exception is itself a conditional clause, otherwise much the same as *nisi*.

53. **auxilii**: partitive genitive depending on *si quid*.

53. **sit**, &c. Note the primary tenses (present and perfect). Cf. l. 30.

54. **ut . . . emigrent, petant, experiantur**: three substantival clauses in apposition to *idem*.

56. **accidat**: 'befall'—of good or bad fortune; generally used of bad, as in l. 34.

59. **vel . . . vel**: see note on 19, l. 22. *Vel* expresses his belief in Caesar's power; **aut** would have been inappropriate.

62. **Rhenum traducatur**. In the sentence 'multitudinem Rhenum traduxit,' *multitudinem* is direct object of the verb, and *Rhenum* is governed by the force of the preposition. In the passive, therefore, *multitudo* becomes the subject and *Rhenum* remains.

Verbs compounded with *ad*, *circum*, *praeter*, *trans*, take two accusatives in this way.

63. **Ariovisti**: subjective genitive. Make a short sentence to show this.

32. 1. **oratione habita**: abl. abs. See Vocab. **habeo**.

3. **animadvertit**: 'noticed.' Here contracted into one word. See note on 24, l. 1.

3. **unos**: 'alone'; so 'Ubii, qui uni' in *B. G.* iv. 16. *Unus* is used in the plural (1) in the sense of 'only, alone'; (2) with nouns plural in form but singular in meaning: *una castra*, one camp.

7. **respondere, permanere**: historical infinitives. Cf. 16, l. 2.

8. **ullam omnino vocem**, &c.: 'and could not extract a single word from them'; *omnino* = 'at all.' *Ullus* is adjectival and used after negatives.

10. **hoc**: 'in this respect—that'; it is the abl. of 'measure of difference' common with comparatives.

11. **ne in occulto quidem**. *Ne* and *quidem* take the emphatic word between them.

14. **horrerent**: 'shudder at.' It is properly an intransitive verb. Other intrans. verbs sometimes used trans. are: *miror*, 'wonder, wonder at'; *tremo*, 'tremble, tremble at'; *doleo*, 'grieve, grieve for.'

14. **tamen**: 'at least.' 'The rest had at least a chance of seeking safety in flight.' Cf. Livy, xxviii. 43, for this not very common use:

'neque recordatur illi ipsi tam infelici imperatori patuisse tamen portus Africae.' In such examples the 'although' clause (concessive protasis) is wanting.

15. **Sequanis**: dative of the agent with the gerundive, *perferendi*. The person on whom the duty devolves is the 'person interested'; hence dative.

**33.** 2. **curae futuram (esse)**: 'would be to him for a care,' predicative dative; *i.e.* 'he would give that matter his attention.' As usual, a verb of promising is used with *future* infinitive.

6. **secundum ea**: 'next to this' (*i.e.* Divitiacus's speech in ch. 31). *Secundum* is from the root of *sequor*, whence its meaning is easily derived.

6. **quare**: practically = *ut*. There seems to be a slight mixture of (1) 'there were many reasons why,' and (2) 'many reasons prompted him to.'

8. **quod . . . videbat, intellegebat**: substantival clauses in apposition to *multae res*.

11. **quod . . . arbitrabatur**: 'a state of things which he considered.' The antecedent of *quod* is the previous sentence.

14. **consuescere**: 'were becoming accustomed'; see note on 14, l. 14.

16. **sibi temperaturos (esse) quin**: 'would refrain from.' See 7, l. 18, for a different construction with this verb. *Quin* is 'whereby not to,' 'so as not to' (= *quī*, the old abl. of the relative, + *ne*, not.)

18. **ante**: adv. 'in former days.' The invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones began in 113 B.C. and lasted till Marius destroyed these hordes in the battles of Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C., and Campi Raudii, 101 B.C. During the interval they were mostly devastating Gaul and Spain.

19. **provinciam**: *i.e.* the Roman province.

21. **quibus rebus**: dative. Many verbs compounded with *ob* take a dative.

21. **quam maturrime**. *Quam* with a superlative expresses the utmost possible degree of the adjective or adverb.

**34.** 1. **qui . . . postularent**: purpose.

4. **summis utriusque rebus**: 'affairs of the utmost importance to both.'

5. **agere cum aliquo de aliqua re**: to discuss a matter with somebody.

5. **si . . . opus esset**: 'if he had wanted anything of Caesar.' But he did not—*i.e.* the condition is 'impossible.'

6. **si . . . velit**: 'if Caesar should want anything of him (Ariovistus). The condition is still possible: note the contrast of tenses.

Observe the idiomatic use of **velle** with two accusatives, (1) **se**, direct object; (2) **quid**, defining extent of action of verb. Cf. *Numquid me vis?* 'Do you want anything of me?' It is common in colloquial Latin (Plautus, Terence), rare in literary Latin (*e.g.* not in Cicero). Contrast *quid sibi vellet* in 44, l. 27, for another use of *velle*.

13. **negotii**: partitive genitive depending on **quid**.

**35.** 3. **affectus**: 'after being treated.'

3. **in consulatu suo**: Caesar was consul in 59 B.C.

5. **hanc**: in emphatic position, '*this* was the return he made.' See Vocab. gratia.

5. **ut . . . gravaretur, putaret**: substantival clauses in apposition to *gratiam*.

8. **quam**: 'any,' the meaning of *quis* after *si*, *ne*, *num*.

9. **amplius**: comparative adverb, 'any more.'

11. **redderet, permitteret**: indirect command. What would be the corresponding 'direct'?

11. **illi, illis**: the Sequani.

14. **fecisset**: *i.e.* Ariovistus.

16. **impetraret**: *i.e.* Caesar. Note the change of subject.

16. **M. Messalla, M. Pisone consulibus.** See note on 2, l. 2.

17. **censuisset**: 'had passed a resolution.' *Censeo* is used (1) of an individual senator moving or supporting a view in the House; (2) of the whole Senate passing a resolution.

17. **quicumque provinciam obtineret**: 'whoever should be governor of the province.' *Quicumque* does not, in Caesar, necessitate a subjunctive, except for some collateral reason—here Oratio Obliqua.

18. **quod . . . posset**: 'so far as he could do so with advantage to the State.' The relative is here used with the subjunctive to *limit* the action of the verb: so, often—*quod sciam*, 'so far as I know.'

20. **sese . . . se . . . non neglecturum**. The subject is repeated because of the length of the intervening clauses.

**36.** 1. **ad haec**: 'to these *remarks*.' See 34, l. 5, where the dative is used of the *person* to whom answer is made. Cf. 44, l. 1, *ad postulata*

3. **imperarent**. The subject is the unexpressed antecedent of *qui vicissent*.

5. **consuesse**: contracted form of *consuevisse*.

10. **qui . . . faceret**: relative and subjunctive to express *cause*. In any case the Oratio Obliqua would have necessitated a subjunctive.

10. **suo**: 'his' (*i.e.* Caesar's). **sibi**, 'to him,' *i.e.* Ariovistus. Here in the same clause the reflexive is used referring to different subjects (i. and iii. in Vocab. **se**).

12. **neque iis neque**. The first *neque* co-ordinates *redditurum* and *illaturum*, the second *iis* and *eorum sociis*.

13. **in eo manerent, quod convenisset**: 'fulfilled the terms of their agreement.' See Vocab. **convenio**, 4, for the impersonal use of the word.

15. **longe iis fraternum nomen . . . afuturum**: 'they would find their name of brother of the Roman people of little avail.'

16. **quod sibi C. denuntiaret**: 'as for Caesar's announcing to him that': subjunctive because in a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua: for **quod** see note on 13, l. 14.

17. **non neglecturum**: he quotes Caesar's words at the end of 35. Caesar's words, 'non negligam,' 'I will not be indifferent to,' mean really *ulciscar*, 'I will revenge'; this stating of a fact less strongly than the truth meant literally requires is called **litotes**.

18. **cum vellet, congrederetur**: indirect command; this would be in Oratio Recta, 'cum voles, congredere.'

19. **exercitatissimi**: a participle used as an adjective in the superlative. See note on 3, l. 24. Cf. 43. l. 24, *auctiores*.

20. **inter**: of time, 'during,' 'in the course of,' 'for the last fourteen years.'

21. **possent**: 'what power the G. had.' *Posse* is used absolutely, as often in Caesar.

**37.** 3. **Aedui, Treveri**: in partitive apposition to the subject of *veniebant*, *legati*.

3. **questum**: Supine in *-um*.

3. **in Galliam**: *i.e.* from across the Rhine.

4. **eorum**: *i.e.* the Aeduans, the speakers: we should rather expect *suos*. So in 5, l. 11.

6. **Treveri autem**: supply *questum*.

6. **pagos centum Sueborum**. As in 12, l. 12, *pagus* means, not the district itself, but the inhabitants.

7. **ripas**: *i e.* various points along the *east* bank; for they had not actually crossed into Gaul. So too in 54, l. 2.

7. **qui . . . conarentur**: purpose.

9. **maturandum sibi (esse)**: 'he ought to take instant action.' This absolute use of *maturare* = 'to hasten' is not so common as its transitive use: e.g. *m. iter*, *m. proficisci*.

12. **resisti**: 'resistance could be offered.' Impersonal use of passive, because in the active the verb governs a dative.

12. **quam celerrime potuit**. See 3, l. 3, for superlative with *quam*.

12. **re frumentaria comparata**: abl. abs.

13. **magnis itineribus**: 'by forced marches.' Abl. of manner.

**38.** 3. **quod**. V. is m., but the relative is often attracted to the gender and number of the complement in its own clause. Cf. Cic. *II. Verr.* 5, 55, 'Carcer ille, *quae* Lautumiae vocantur.'

7. **id**: *i.e.* the occupation of V. by Ariovistus. The neuter pronoun is often thus used to refer, not to any one word, but to the general contents of a sentence.

10. **namque**: 'for in fact,' This strengthened form of *nam* is usually the first word in the clause. Cf. *enim* and *etenim*.

12. **usui**: predicative dative of purpose.

13. **facultas**: 'abundance,' 'supply.' Two lines further on it means 'facilities.'

14. **idque**: *i.e.* the *oppidum* of Vesontio.

22. **quod est non amplius, &c.**: 'of not more than 1,600 feet.' *Amplius*, as often in descriptions of distance, size, &c., is used without *quam* and without affecting the construction, almost as though parenthetical, '1,600 (no more).'

23. **pedum mille sescentorum**: descriptive genitive—as usual, with epithet—qualifying *quod* (*spatium*).

24. **intermittit**: 'leaves a gap,' 'leaves the circle incomplete'—in explanation of *paene* in l. 20. For this rarer intrans. use of the verb cf. 'febris intermittit,' from which we get the medical term 'intermittent.'

25. **continet**: 'completes the circle'; 'occupies the entire remaining space'; lit. 'holds together, connects.'

26. **ripae**: dat. sing. dependent on *contingant*—a verb also constructed with the accusative. Some take *ripae* as nom. pl. and *radices* as accus. direct obj. of *contingant*.

28. **magnis itineribus**: 'forced marches,' forms a single notion, hence the apparent breach of the rule requiring two or more adjectives qualifying the same noun to be co-ordinated. Cf. 18, l. 29.

39. 2. **commeatus**: 'stores' (other than corn, which, as here, is often specified separately).

3. **vocibus**: 'talk.'

4. **magnitudine, virtute**: abl. of quality; as usual, with epithet.

8. **congressos**: 'encountered'; *congredi*, to meet in armed conflict is often accompanied by *armis*.

9. **aciem oculorum**: 'the fierce glance of their eyes.'

16. **tribunis militum**: See Intr. § 51.

16. **praefectis**: 'officers,' *i.e.* of the auxiliaries.

16. **reliquis**. This refers to the friends and acquaintances (*contubernales*) who accompanied proconsuls and propraetors to their provinces to share their patronage and serve their military apprenticeship. See Intr. § 69.

18. **usum**: 'experience.'

18. **alius alia causa illata**: 'one pleading one excuse and another another.' 'Difference' is often expressed by *alius* (or kindred adverbs) repeated in the same clause.

19. **quam . . . diceret**. If the clause ran 'quae sibi . . . necessaria esset,' the subjunctive would be due to 'reported definition,' *i.e.* it is not Caesar himself who describes the 'causa' as 'necessaria' (the indicative would then be used), but Caesar attributes this description to the cowards who made the excuses. In this sentence a verb of saying is, unnecessarily, introduced and attracted into the subjunctive; the choice of the subjunctive by itself would imply 'asserting,' without *diceret*. Cf. Cic. *Phil.* ii. 4, quoted by Roby, 1742: 'At etiam litteras, quas me sibi misisse diceret, recitavit.'

22. **vultum fingere**: 'compose their countenances,' *i.e.* try to look brave, though they did not feel so.

25. **miserabantur**: 'lamented.' *Miseror*, w. *acc.*, means to 'express pity' (in words); *misereor*, w. *gen.*, is to feel pity for, or show it by acts.

28. **milites**: *i.e.* the rank and file. Four of Caesar's six legions were composed of war-hardened veterans, not so liable to panic.

28. **centuriones**. See Intr. § 52.

29. **qui equitatui praeerant**: for the cavalry officers see Intr. § 54.

29. **qui**: *ei, qui*: see note on 1, l. 2.

32. **ipsos**: = *se ipsos*: it is used for emphasis to bring out the antithesis with Ariovistum.

33. **rem frumentariam**. This is really the subject of *ut supportari posset*, attracted out of its clause. Cf. 'You hear the learn'd Bellario, what he writes,' in Shakespeare, *Merchant of Venice*, Act. IV. sc. i. l. 162.

33. **ut**: 'that not,' after a verb of fearing. In such sentences *ut* = 'how'; so that *vereor ut veniat* = 'I have fears as to how he will come,' *i.e.* 'I fear he will not come.'

33. **supportari**: 'transported,' *i.e.* to the front (*sub*). The word is commonly used of military stores. Cf. 48, l. 6.

36. **audientes**: 'listening to,' and so 'obedient.' The participle is the only part of *audio* thus used. It is *adjectival* and takes a dative like *oboedio*, itself a compound of *audio*, and other verbs of commanding and obeying.

36. **signa ferre**: 'to march,' 'resume the march.' When the camp was broken up (*castra movere*), each standard (*signum*) was raised by its *signifer*, so that the men knew where to fall in.

**40.** 2. **ordinum**: *ordo = centuria*. See Intr. §§ 46, 52. Besides the officers, only the ten senior centurions of each legion (the *primipili*) were ordinarily summoned to a council of war (*consilium*). On this occasion all the sixty centurions of each legion were called in.

7. **cur . . . iudicaret**: the verb would be *iudicet* in Oratio Recta; subjunctive because it is a **dubitative question**, *i.e.* one not asked for information but to express uncertainty. *Quisquam* is only used after a negative or virtual negative: *cur*, &c., implies that no one would.

12. **quid tandem vererentur.** 'What in the world were they afraid of?' *Tandem* added to a question makes it more urgent. Cf. 'Quousque tandem abutere patientia nostra?' 'how long pray,' &c. This question is also dubitative.

13. **sŭa**: their own.

13. **ipsius**: Caesar's, for *sua ipsius*. But as *sua* is already used referring to the subject of the clause, another *sua* referring to Caesar might be ambiguous.

14. **factum eius hostis periculum.** 'They had measured their strength against that enemy.' *Periculum* means primarily 'attempt,' 'trial ; thence comes the secondary but more common force, 'hazard,' 'danger.'

14. **patrum nostrorum memoria**: 'within the recollection of our fathers.' For date and events of Cimbric wars, see 33, l. 18.

15. **C. Mario.** See Intr. § 40, and Vocabulary.

17. **factum**: supply *periculum*.

17. **nuper**: 'lately.' The Servile War (*Servilis Tumultus*, 73–71 B.C.) was an outbreak of gladiators under the heroic Spartacus. He was joined by hordes of revolting slaves and for two years defied the Roman armies.

18. **tumultus**: any sudden danger threatening the State, such as insurrection, irruption of Gauls, or other barbarians, and the like.

18. **quos.** The antecedent is *servi*, contained in *servili*.

18. **usus**: 'military experience.'

18. **disciplina**: 'military training, drill.' Gladiators were slaves specially trained in all martial accomplishments with a view to fighting in the amphitheatre.

20. **boni**: partitive genitive, dependent on *quantum*.

21. **inermos**: 'ill-armed,' rather than 'unarmed,' here. The adjective is *inermis, -e* or *-us, -a, -um*; the former being the more common.

25. **superarint**: used absolutely, 'prove victorious,' not as in l. 22, with object.

25. **qui tamen**: 'and yet they.'

26. **adversum proelium**: 'a reverse, defeat,' *i.e.* at Admagetobriga. See 31, l. 31.

27. **hos**: emphatic position of antecedent after relative clause.

28. **diuturnitate**, &c. 'That at a time when the Gauls were exhausted by the long continuance of the war, Ariovistus, after confining himself to his camp and the marshes for many months without offering battle, had suddenly attacked them when they had given up all hope of a battle and were dispersed, and had defeated them more by craft and stratagem than by valour.'

28. **defatigatis Gallis**: abl. abs., although referring to the object of *adortum*, with which *desperantes* and *dispersos* agree. Emphasis is gained here, but this use of the abl. abs. should not be imitated. See Bradley's 'Arnold,' § 422, b. Cf. 53, l. 27, 'is se praesente.'

30. **potestatem sui facere**: to give anybody access to one's self for conversation, fighting, &c. Here 'to offer battle.'

31. **adortum**. *Adorior* is generally used of a sudden, unexpected attack. *Aggredior* is the ordinary word for attack.

32. **cui rationi**. Emphasis is gained by putting the relative clause before the antecedent; note, too, the attraction of the antecedent noun into same clause and case as the relative.

34. **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

34. **capi**: to be misled, deceived.

35. **posse**. *Sperare* is generally followed by the future infinitive; *posse* is always an exception: the verb has no future infinitive and, moreover, possibility suggests futurity.

35. **qui**. The antecedent *eos* is omitted. 'Those who attributed their own terror to a pretended anxiety about the corn supply, . . .'

37. **officio**: 'sense of duty.'

38. **curae**: predicative dative.

38. **frumentum**: corn (*i.e.* the grain); **frumenta**, crops (standing).

41. **ipsos**: 'for themselves'; *se* would have referred to Caesar.

41. **quod . . . dicantur**: 'as to the assertion that they would not, &c.' Cf. 13, l. 14.

43. **quibuscumque**. The antecedent is omitted; it would be *eis*, dative dependent on *defuisse*.

45. **avaritiam . . . convictam**: 'rapacity proved against them.' *Convincere facinus*, 'to clearly prove some crime' (here used in the passive), is not so common as *convincere aliquem avaritiae*, 'to prove a man guilty of.' Cf. Tac. *A.* xiv. 40, 5: 'quod (crimen) apud Patres convictum.'

47. **quod**: the antecedent *id*, object of *repraesentaturum* is omitted. 'What he had intended to postpone to a more distant day, he would now do at once.'

53. **non dubitaret**: used absolutely, 'he felt no misgivings.'

53. **eam**: i.e. *legionem*, subject of *futuram* (*esse*).

53. **praetoria cohors**: a body of picked troops to protect the person of the general.

41. 1. **mirum in modum**: 'in a marvellous manner.' This is the usual position of **in** in such phrases. Cf. Cic. *Verr.* i. 5: 'Cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati.'

3. **innata est**: 'suddenly sprang up among them'; aorist, not true perfect.

3. **princeps**: 'first.'

3. **per.** These officers were the spokesmen. A personal agent acting directly is expressed in Latin by *a* + abl. An intermediary or personal agent used as an instrument by *per* + accus. See Bradley's 'Arnold,' § 267.

4. **quod . . . fecisset.** Subjunctive is used because it is virtually Oratio Obliqua.

7. **primorum ordinum centurionibus.** See note on 40, l. 2.

7. **cum . . . egerunt**: 'requested.' Cf. Cic. *Ad Fam.* v. 2, where it = 'entreated.' Often the phrase means 'to discuss, talk over with.'

8. **se . . . dubitasse.** The construction drops into Oratio Obliqua without any formal verb of statement. (*-asse* = *-avisse*.)

9. **summa belli**: 'the general conduct of the war.'

9. **suum, sed imperatoris**: to be taken predicatively: 'did not lie with them but with the general.'

12. **ei**: 'in him'; dative dependent on *fidem habebat* = *fidebat*.

13. **amplius**: used adverbially, as in 38, l. 22, without *quam* and without influencing the sentence, almost like a parenthesis.

13. **circuitu**: 'by a roundabout route of over 50 miles.'

42. 2. **quod . . . postulasset**: subjunctive because the passage is in Oratio Obliqua.

2. **per se**: 'so far as he was concerned'; an idiomatic force of *per*.

8. **cognitis suis postulatis**: abl. abs.

9. **fore, uti . . . desisteret**: equivalent to a future infinitive, the natural tense after a verb of *hoping*.

13. **vereri se**: Oratio Obliqua, because *postulavit* implies speaking.

14. **veniret**: indirect command: what would it be in direct speech?

14. **alia ratione**: 'otherwise.'

16. **Gallorum equitatui.** All Caesar's 4,000 cavalry were Gauls, and not to be thoroughly trusted; cf. his experience in the first skirmish with the Helvetii, when Dumnorix drew them off.

18. **omnibus equis detractis**: abl. abs.

18. **Gallis equitibus**: dative. After many verbs of taking away (e.g. *abstraho*, *detraho*, *adimo*, *aufero*, *eripio*, &c.) *from* a person is expressed by a *dative* of the remoter object, or a preposition with the ablative. Cf. *B. G.* ii. 25: 'scuto militi detracto.'

18. **eo**: 'thither,' 'on them,' *i.e.* the horses. Cf. 51, l. 22, where *eo* = on the *raedae* and *carri*.

21. **si quid opus facti esset**: 'should any necessity for action arise.' **Quid** is adverbial accusative indicating the extent of the necessity; **facto** is abl. sing. neut. of past participle passive—the thing done (concrete), where in English we speak of the action (abstract): for this common idiom cf. Sall. *Cat.* 1: 'priusquam incipias, consulto opus est.'

22. **non irridicule**: 'not without humour,' *i.e.* 'very wittily'—an instance of litotes, *i.e.* understating the case, using a milder word than the meaning you wish to convey warrants. Cf. 35, l. 20, 'non neglecturum,' and 39, l. 13, 'non mediocriter.'

21. **pollicitum . . . rescribere**: 'after promising to regard the tenth legion as his praetorian cohort (see 40, l. 53) he promoted them to the Horse.'

The joke consists in the double meaning of **ad equum rescribere**, 1 (literal) to re-enrol among the cavalry, *i.e.* transfer to the cavalry; (2) to promote to the Order of Equites.

In early times all Roman soldiers provided their own equipments: naturally the cavalry (*equites*) would be drawn from the wealthier citizens. Long before Caesar's time Romans had ceased to serve in the cavalry, but the *ordo equestris*, or those qualified to serve in the cavalry, survived as a political institution. The *equites* were, roughly speaking, all rich men, who were not members of the Senate. Hence the idea of promotion in meaning (2), which is, literally, 'to register for a horse,' a reminiscence of the list kept when the Roman *equites* actually served.

**43.** 1. **tumulus terrenus**: a single notion, therefore *grandis* can be added without co-ordinating conjunction. See note on 18, l. 29.

3. **dictum**: 'arranged.' So in 42, l. 9, *dies dictus est.*

7. **ex equis**: 'on horseback'; contrast the English and Latin usage, and see 4, l. 2, *ex vinclis.*

7. **ut colloquerentur, adduceret**: substantival clauses the objects of *postulavit.*

9. **ventum est**: 'they arrived there'; the passive of intransitive verbs can only be used *impersonally.*

10. **quod . . . appellatus esset, missa**: substantival clauses in apposition to *beneficia*; the subjunctive is due to Oratio Obliqua.

12. **quam rem**: accusative and infinitive because *quam* really = *eam autem.*

12. **contigisse.** This word is generally used of good fortune.

13. **cum**: 'although.'

16. **veteres**: 'of long standing.' *Vetus* means 'old and still in existence.'

19. **ut**: 'how'; indirect question.

20. **prius, quam . . . appetissent**: in Oratio Recta the verb would have been in the indicative, as it refers only to *time. Antequam* and *priusquam* do not take a subjunctive (except for some collateral reason, as here) unless a *purpose* is implied.

23. **sui**: 'of their possessions'; partitive genitive dependent on *nihil.*

24. **auctiores**: the comparative of *auctus* used as an adjective; see on 36, l. 19.

25. **iis**: dative of remoter object dependent on *eripi*; see 42, l. 18.

25. **quis . . . posset**: in Oratio Recta the verb would still be subjunctive, for the question is 'dubitative,' but the *present* tense would be used. Cf. 40, l. 7.

27. **Aeduis, sociis**: datives of the remoter object dependent on *inferret. Inferret*, *redderet* are indirect commands; what would they become in Oratio Recta?

29. **at**: 'at any rate.'

44. 1. **ad postulata**: for constructions of *respondit* see note on 36 l. 1.

3. **sua sponte**: 'of his own accord.' Cf. 9, l. 3. *Sponte*, and a rarer *spontis*, are the only cases used of this defective noun, nearly always with *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. The idea is 'a pledging of one's self' (*spondeo*); hence it is used (1) of spontaneous action (usual meaning), (2) of unaided action.

6. **ab ipsis**: *i.e.* the Gauls; supplied from *Gallia*: it is emphatic, 'by their own act,' 'voluntarily conceded.'

8. **consuerint**: 'are wont.' The tense (perfect of verb in *-sco* equivalent to a present) is used to express a general truth. See note on 31, l. 30.

11. **uno proelio**: *i.e.* at Admagetobriga. Cf. 31, l. 31.

12. **velint**: more vivid than *vellent*.

13. **decertare**: 'to fight it out.' *De* = 'to the bitter end.' Cf. *debellare* and *detonare*—of thunder, 'to work itself out.'

14. **de stipendio recusare**: 'object to pay.'

16. **ornamento, praesidio, detrimento**: predicative datives. See note on 18, l. 32.

17. **idque**: 'and this connection,' i.e. *amicitia*. The neuter refers rather to the general meaning of a clause than to any particular word in it.

20. **quod . . . traducat**: 'as to his bringing across.' Cf. 13, l. 14.

23. **quod . . . venerit, intulerit, defenderit**: 'the fact that he,' &c.; substantival clauses the subjects of *testimonio esse*.

24. **bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit**: 'he waged not an offensive, but a defensive, war.'

27. **quid sibi vellet**: 'what did he want to get?' *Sibi* = *Caesari*; yet *suas* refers to Ariovistus. The meaning of a passage is often the only clue to what the reflexive refers to. *Sibi* is a dative of advantage. Compare *si quid ille se velit* in 34, l. 6, and note.

29. **nostram** = *Romanam*. See 1, l. 3. So *nostros* and *nos*, and even the first person of the verb *interpellaremus*. The ordinary rule is for a finite verb in Oratio Obliqua to be in the third person, first being inadmissible.

30. **concedi**: impersonal passive, 'just as the Romans ought not to give way to him (Ariovistus) if,' &c.

32. **quod . . . . diceret**: 'as to his remark that.'

34. **ut non**: used in negative clauses of consequence: **ne** in negative clauses of purpose.

34. **bello Allobrogum proximo**: 61 B.C. See note on 6, l. 8.

36. **quas Aedui secum**, &c.: *i.e.* the Admagetobriga War.

38. **simulata**: feigned, pretended. 'Quod non est, simulo: dissimuloque, quod est.'

39. **quod exercitum**, &c.: 'as to his keeping an army . . .'

40. **habere**. Where we say 'he did so,' Latin repeats the verb in some form.

40. **qui nisi**: 'and unless they.'

40. **decedat, deducat, interfecerit**, &c: tenses as in Oratio Recta for vividness. See note on 31, l. 30.

44. **ipsis, eorum**: *i.e.* the Roman nobles.

44. **compertum habere**. See note on 9, l. 10, for the analytical perfect:

it is specially common with verbs of knowing, e.g. *notum*, *cognitum*, *compertum habeo*.

47. **sibi . . . se**: Ariovistus.

49. **eius**: Caesar.

**45.** 1. **in eam sententiam, quare**: 'to explain why,' *in* and acc. = towards: referring to the tendency of his remarks. *Quare* is more common in *indirect*, *cur* in direct questions.

4. **esse Ariovisti**: 'belonged to Ariovistus': possessive genitive.

5. **bello superatos.** The Romans took the first important steps towards the conquest of Gallia Transalpina by attacking the Salyes in 125 B.C. The King of the Salyes fled to the territory of the Allobroges. When, in 122, the Romans attacked the Allobroges, the King of the Arverni, then the leading clan in Gallia Celtica, declared against Rome.

Quintus Fabius Maximus, the consul for 121, was despatched against them, and in August of that year routed the combined forces of the Arverni and Allobroges, thereby winning the surname of Allobrogicus. A further victory over the Arverni (and Ruteni) concluded the war. This campaign led to the formation of the Roman Province, the northern frontier of which was the Cevennes. Thus the Arverni were left independent, and not even tribute was imposed on them.

In that year, 121 B.C., the democrat Gaius Gracchus was slain and the Senatorial Party, who were opposed to an adventurous colonial policy, recovered their power. This no doubt accounts for the apparent moderation of the Romans.

8. **antiquissimum quodque.** For this idiomatic use of the superlative, see note on 31, l. 48.

11. **iudicium Senatus**: the Senate controlled the foreign affairs of Rome, and it was this body that, in 121 B.C., allowed the conquered Arverni to retain their independence (*suis legibus uti*).

**46.** 2. **nuntiatum est**: 'news was brought'; impersonal use of the passive. If Caesar's messengers had returned with the news, it would have been *renuntiatum est*, 'was brought back.'

2. **propius tumulum.** Cf. 54, l. 3, *proximi Rhenum*. The Adverbs *propius*, *proxime*, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, have no real positive, but are connected with the preposition *prope* from which they seem to derive their power of governing an accusative. Other constructions are (2) with the dative, (3) $a$ + abl.

6. **reicerent**: 'throw back,' *i.e.* return the fire; not as in 52, l. 8.

7. **legionis**: to be taken with *proelium*.

8. **committendum**: *sc. proelium*.

9. **per fidem**: 'through their trust in him (Caesar)'—this being regarded as the means by which Caesar was able to overreach them.

10. **posteaquam**: 'after that,' 'so soon as,' 'when': is used with the indicative (generally perfect or pluperfect), unless the passage is in Oratio Obliqua.

10. **elatum est**: 'it was spread abroad.'

11. **omni Gallia Romanis interdixissent**: *Gallia*, abl. of separation: *Romanis*, dative of disadvantage. Compare the common phrase,

*interdicere alicui aquâ et igni* = to banish: other constructions are, (1) *aliquem aliqua re*, (2) *alicui aliquid*, (3) *ne* + subj.

13. **ut**: 'how'; indirect question.

14. **multo**: abl. of measure of difference.

15. **exercitui**: dative of the remoter object dependent on a verb compounded with *in*.

47. 2. **velle se**: Oratio Obliqua, because *legatos mittit* implies a message.

2. **inter eos**: we should rather expect *se* here in its reciprocal sense; but *se* is already used referring to Ariovistus.

2. **agi coeptae**. The passive of *coepi* (in perfect stem tenses only) is always used with a *passive* infinitive. Cf. *B. G.* ii. 6.

3. **uti . . . constitueret**: 'let him appoint': it is as though some word like *hortabatur* had been omitted.

4. **id minus vellet**: 'not altogether disposed': a more polite and less downright negative than *nollet* would have been.

7. **pridie eius diei**: 'on the previous day;' as in *postridie eius diei* (23, l. 1), the genitive marks the day a little more precisely. *Pridie*, *postridie*, now ranking as adverbs, are really locative cases of obsolete nouns meaning 'the day before,' 'the day after.'

7. **retineri, quin**: 'could not be restrained from.' *Quin* = *quî* + *ne*, *i.e.* the old abl. = *quo* and the old negative, meaning 'by which thing not,' 'whereby not,' 'so as not to,' 'from.' It is used after verbs of preventing, but only after negatives: *quominus* is also used, but not so commonly and not always after a negative.

11. **Gaium Valerium Procillum**. His father had been made a Roman citizen by Gaius **Valerius** Flaccus, who had governed Gaul as Propraetor in 83 B.C.

Foreigners (*peregrini*) when made citizens often assumed the *gens* name (2nd of the three) of the bestower of the franchise. Thus, *e.g.*, the Greek poet Archias assumed the name of Aulus **Licinius** Archias, because his patron, Lucullus, belonged to the Gens **Licinia**. Similarly, manumitted slaves always took the *gens* name of their old masters.

12. **summa virtute**: abl. of quality, with epithet, as usual.

12. **humanitate**: as in 1, l. 7: 'refinement.'

12. **adulescentem**: 'a young man.' The word is used of people from about fifteen to thirty or forty years of age.

13. **civitas**: the Roman citizenship *par excellence*, unless otherwise stated. Various degrees of citizenship were conferred.

13. **donatus**. *Donare aliquem aliqua re* is 'to present a person with a thing': in the passive, *aliquem* becomes the subject in the nominative, and the ablative remains.

14. **fidem**: 'trustworthiness.'

14. **linguae Gallicae**: Celtic. (Breton is the modern representative.)

15. **qua multa . . . utebatur**: 'a language of which Ariovistus now made frequent use.' Note the adverbial use of the adjective *multa*. Cf. *domesticus otior*, 'I lounge about at home.'

16. **in eo**: 'in his case.'

17. **hospitio**: 'friendly relations, friendship.' Cf. 31, l. 23.

19. **referrent**: 'report.'

19. **quos** = *eos autem.*

21. **conclamavit**: 'shouted out loud' (*con*).

21. **quid venirent?** Subjunctive in indirect question.

21. **an**: 'was it to act the spy?' *An* introduces the second member of an alternative question, direct or indirect. Sometimes, as here, the first member of such a question is wanting and must be mentally supplied from the context.

22. **conantes dicere**: 'when they attempted to speak.'

**48.** 2. **sub**: 'at the foot of.'

3. **praeter**: past.

5. **frumento commeatuque**. See note on 39, l. 2.

6. **supportaretur**: 'was being brought up.' See note on 39, l. 33. Give the imperfect its full force.

7. **dies continuos quinque**: accusative of duration of time; yet it means '*on* five consecutive days,' for Caesar is not likely to have kept his men out of camp under arms all that time.

8. **instructam habuit**: 'kept ready drawn up'; for the analytical perfect, see note on 9, l. 10.

9. **potestas**: 'the opportunity should not be denied him.' Cf. 40. l. 30, *potestatem sui.*

11. **cotidie**: daily (of an event happening every day); *in dies* is 'from day to day,' where there is daily growth or decrease.

13. **numero**: abl. of respect.

14. **ex omni copia**: 'from the whole number'; not 'force,' for which the plural *copiae* is used.

14. **singuli singulos**: 'each chose one for himself.' So in 52, l. 1, *singulis singulos*, we have a pair of distributive numerals.

16. **si quid erat durius**: 'whenever anything went hardly with them.' The comparative *durius* is used absolutely: *si* = 'whenever,' and is used in a frequentative sense with the indicative. *Durius* in this connection is a frequent litotes for *adversum*, just as a newspaper correspondent might soften a 'disaster' into a 'reverse' or a 'check.'

19. **celerius recipiendum**: 'had to beat a somewhat hasty retreat.' The comparative is used absolutely.

21. **equorum**: to be taken with *iubis*.

21. **cursum adaequarent**: 'made their pace equal' (to that of the horses); *i.e.* kept up with them.

It is interesting to note that Caesar himself copied these German tactics; *e.g.* when at Pharsalia (*B. C.* iii. 75, 84) he mingled some of the most active of his infantry with his scanty cavalry to strengthen them.

**49.** 2. **eum locum, quo in loco**. For the repetition of the noun in the relative clause, cf. 6, l. 1.

3. **passus sescentos**. The accusative properly expresses *space traversed*, and is then loosely used for *distance off*.

8. **expedita**: agrees grammatically with *milia*, but in sense with *hominum*. See Intr. § 61.

9. **quae . . . perterrerent, prohiberent**: subjunctive with relative to express purpose.

10. **nihilo setius**: 'none the less.' The positive adverb *secus*, 'otherwise,' is from the root of *sequor*, 'to follow.' The comp. *setius* is often used with the abl. of measure of difference.

**50.** 1. **instituto suo**: 'according to his custom'; abl. of manner.

4. **potestatem fecit**: 'gave an opportunity,' as in 40, l. 30.

5. **meridiem.** *Meridies* is for *medidies* (*medius*, *dies*).

11. **proelio non decertaret**: 'did not risk a decisive battle.' The subjunctive is due to indirect question. For the force of *de*, see note on 44, l. 13.

11. **quam ob rem** is more common in indirect than in direct questions.

12. **quod . . . esset.** The subjunctive shows that Caesar does not give the reason as his own, but ascribes it to the captives; 'because, they said,' &c.

13. **ut . . . declararent**: substantival clause in apposition to *ea consuetudo.*

14. **sortibus.** Tacitus (*Germ.* 10) describes how the ancient Germans cast lots, a favourite method being to shake up slivers of the wood of some fruit tree in a white cloth, and read the *runes*, previously inscribed, on the pieces shaken out.

15. **ex usu**: 'advantageous'; 'advisable.' See note on 30, l. 5.

15. **necne**: 'or no.' This interrogative particle is used in the second part of an *indirect* alternative question when it negatives the first.

In *direct* questions, *annon* is used in a similar case.

16. **fas**: 'the will of heaven.' The word is often contrasted with *ius*, human law.

16. **superare**: 'win the day.' Used absolutely, as in 40, l. 25.

**51.** 3. **alarios**: = *auxilia*, the auxiliary troops. This is the meaning in Caesar's time. Up to Marius's time the word was used of all the forces of the Roman allies, from the fact that they were always posted on the wings (*alae*) on the battle-field. Here, as in *B. C.* i. 73, 'cohortes alariae et legionariae,' they are contrasted with the regular legionaries.

8. **pro**: 'in proportion to; compared with.'

9. **ad speciem**: 'to make a show of strength.'

18. **Marcomanos**: the men of the 'march,' or border. It is not possible to locate these tribes even approximately, as the Germans were still a migratory people.

21. **raedis et carris.** For a similar barricade of carriages and waggons cf. 26, l. 8.

22. **eo**: 'on them' (the *raedae* and *carri*). Cf. 42, l. 18.

24. **se**: *i.e.* the women.

**52.** 1. **singulis legionibus singulos legatos**: *i.e.* one *legatus* to each of the six legions. Cf. 48, l. 14. Unless sent, as here, on some special service, the *legati* were not attached to the legions like the *tribuni militum.*

2. **suae quisque**: a common use of *quisque* with *suus*. Note this, the invariable order.

3. **a dextro cornu**: '*on* the right wing.' So, too, in l. 13; and see note on 1, l. 19, *ab Sequanis.*

6. **itaque**: not 'accordingly,' but 'and so'; = *et ita*.

8. **reiectis**: 'throwing away'; 'discarding'; not as in 46, l. 6. For the functions of *pilum* and *gladius* see Intr. §§ 58, 59.

9. **ex consuetudine sua**: 'in accordance with their custom.' For *ex* see 30, l. 5.

11. **qui . . . insilirent**: relative with subjunctive, to express consequence; 'brave enough to.'

16. **P. Crassus.** Publius Licinius Crassus, the younger (*adulescens*), was the son of the triumvir Marcus Licinius Crassus. After Labienus, he was perhaps Caesar's ablest *legatus*, and served in three campaigns; he then joined his father in the Parthian War, and perished in the disaster at Carrhae in 53 B.C. Cf. 21, l. 12.

16. **qui equitatui praeerat**: 'who commanded the cavalry.' *Prae* is one of the prepositions which in composition takes a dative. See Intr. § 54.

17. **expeditior**: literally, 'more disengaged'; *i.e.* 'in lighter order.' The participle is used in the comparative as an adjective.

18. **laborantibus nostris**: 'to help our men who were hard pressed.' *Nostris* is dative of remoter object (advantage). *Subsidio* is predicative dative of purpose. Cf. 18, l. 32. *Laborare*, 'to toil, strive hard'; hence, of the physical distress of severe toil, to *labour* under any kind of difficulty—*e.g.* pain, debt, violent emotions; of soldiers, to be hard pressed; of the moon, to suffer eclipse; of ships, battling with the waves, &c.

**53.** 2. **prius, quam**: with indicative, because only the notion of time enters into the clause, with no idea of purpose. Contrast 19, l. 13, where see note.

4. **viribus confisi**: 'trusting to their strength'; ablative. Three constructions are found with *confido*: (1) with **ablative**, of things (*B. G.* vii. 50, 'hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent'); (2) with **dative**, of personal objects (*B. G.* i. 40, 'huic legioni Caesar confidebat maxime'); (3) with **accusative and infinitive** (*B. G.* i. 23, 'intercludi posse confiderent').

5. **tranare contenderunt**: see note on 23, l. 10.

7. **nactus**: 'came across.' *Nanciscor* is generally used of things one gets without any effort or merit of one's own.

7. **profugit**: 'escaped.' In *B. G.* v. 29 we have an intimation of the death of Ariovistus; possibly he died of his wounds.

9. **Sueba**: nominative; *natione*, abl. of respect.

10. **duxerat**: (1) 'had brought with him'; (2) 'had married'; = *in matrimonium duxerat*.

11. **utraque**: *uterque* is 'both' regarded separately; 'each of them.'

14. **trinis catenis**: 'a triple chain.' The distributive is used instead of the ordinal, because *catena* is generally used in the plural, just as we say *bina*, *trina castra*—two, three camps. Cf. 32, l. 3.

19. **honestus**: 'held in honour'; 'distinguished'; 'eminent.' Not 'honest,' which is *probus*.

21. **hospitem**: 'intimate.' See 31, l. 23, for the relation.

27. **se praesente**: abl. absolute. The repetition of the reflexive

pronoun only heightens the gruesomeness of the situation. Emphasis is gained, too, by the unusual construction of an abl. abs. referring to the subject of the sentence. See note on 40, l. 28.

28. **consultum** (**esse**): perfect infinitive passive, used impersonally; 'the will of the gods was consulted.'

28. **sortibus**: 'by the lot.' Abl. of instrument. Cf. 50, l. 14. See Tac. *Germ.* x. for the use of the lot by the Germans.

29. **igni necaretur**: 'burnt alive.' For *nex* see note on 16, l. 16.

29. **an**: interrogative particle, used in the *second* member of alternative questions.

**54.** 2. **ad ripas**: see note on 37, l. 7.

3. **proximi Rhenum**: see note on 46, l. 2.

7. **hibernis** (sc. *castris*): dative, dependent on a verb compounded with *prae*.

8. **ad conventus agendos**: 'to hold the assizes.'

Besides being commander-in-chief in his province, the proconsul or propraetor was also supreme judge, and periodically visited the chief cities and centres in his district to preside over the administration of justice.

During his eight years of command, whenever he could safely leave Transalpine Gaul, Caesar made a practice of visiting Cisalpine Gaul every winter for this purpose, and also because it was a convenient place whence to watch the course of politics in the capital.

# VOCABULARY

**A.** Abbr. or **Aulus.**

**a.** See **ab.**

**a.d.** Abbr. for **ante diem.** See note on 6, l. 17.

**ab**, *prep. w. abl.* (**a** before consonants: **ab** before vowels). (1) From. (2) On the side of, in the direction of. (3) By (of personal agent with passive verbs).

**abdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* Hide; conceal. (The place of concealment expr. by **in** + abl.; or, if motion to is implied, by **in** + acc.).

**abdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* Lead away.

**absens, -entis,** *p. pres.* of **absum.** Absent.

**abstĭnĕo, -tĭnŭi, -tentum,** 2, *v. n.* Abstain, refrain from.

**absum, āfŭi, ăbesse,** *v. n.* (1) To be absent. (2) To be distant (the distance expr. by abl. in 41, l. 17). (3) To be wanting—*i.e.* of no service or avail to (w. dat. of **disadvantage** in 36, l. 15).

**ac.** See **atque.**

**accēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3, *v. n.* (1) To approach (often, in a hostile manner, 51, l. 13). (2) To be added.

**acceptus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Agreeable to; popular with (really *p. p. p.* of **accipio** used as adj.).

**accĭdo, -cĭdi,** 3, *v. n.* Happen; come to pass. (In 18, l. 25, of an unfortunate, in 30, l. 6, of a fortunate event.)

**accĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Receive. (2) Suffer; undergo (31, l. 20).

**accurro, -curri (-cŭcurri), -cursum,** 3, *v. n.* Run up; gallop up.

**accūso, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Accuse; blame; rebuke.

**ăcĭes, -ei,** *f.* (1) Battle array of an army (see **triplex acies,** Intr. § 47). (2) Line in battle array. (3) Fierce look; glare (39, l. 9).

**ācrĭter,** *adv. of* **ācer.** Fiercely.

**ăd,** *prep. w. acc.* (1) To; towards. (2) To the neighbourhood of (see note on 7, l. 4). (3) At (where the verb implies no motion; cf. 7, l. 7). (4) About; to the number of (w. numerals). (5) By (a certain date, 7, l. 22). (6) For; for the purpose of (w. gerund and gerundive). (7) For (**ad speciem,** for show, in 51, l. 9).

**ădaequo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Equal (the pace of); keep pace with.

**ădămo, -ămāvi, -ămatum,** 1, *v. a.* Admire greatly; fall in love with.

**addūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Lead *or* bring up. (2) Influence; prompt; move.

**ădĕquĭto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To ride *or* gallop up to (w. **ad,** 46, l. 3).

**ădhĭbĕo, -hĭbŭi, -hĭbĭtum,** 2, *v. a.* Call in; summon (to = **in** + acc.).

**ădĭtus, -ūs,** *m.* Access.

**Admagetobriga, -ae,** *f.* A Sequanian town, probably not far from Vesontio.

**admīror, -mīrātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To be astonished; wonder.

**admitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To let go. (2) (espec. w. **equum**) To give a horse the reins, let it gallop. Hence the common phrase, **equo admisso,** at a gallop.

**ădŏrĭor, -ortus sum,** 4, *v. dep.* To attack (esp. of sudden, secret attack).

**adscisco, -īvi, -ītum,** 3, *v. a.* To admit; receive in any capacity (*e.g.* as allies, 5, l. 14).

**adsum, adfui, adesse,** *v. n.* To be present; be at hand.
**ădŭlescens, -entis,** *c.* A young person; youth.
**ădŭlescentĭa, -ae,** *f.* Youth.
**adventus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) Approach. (2) Arrival.
**adversus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Unfavourable; unsuccessful.
**adverto, -verti, -versum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To turn towards. (2) (Esp. w. **animum**) to notice; observe; perceive = **animadvertere** (*q.v.*)
**aedĭfĭcĭum, -i,** *n.* A building.
**Aedŭi, -ōrum,** *m.* The Aedui. See note on 11, l. 5.
**Aedŭus, -i,** *m.* An Aeduan.
**aegerrĭmē,** *adv.* With the utmost difficulty. Superl. of **aegre,** with difficulty.
**Aemĭlĭus, -ĭi,** *m.* A cavalry officer *or* **decurio,** in Caesar's army.
**aequĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Justice; fairness.
**aequo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To make equal; equalise.
**aequus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Equal.
**aestas, -ātis,** *f.* Summer.
**affĕro, attŭli, allātum, afferre,** *v. a.* (1) Bring to. (2) Cause; occasion (53, l. 18).
**affĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To affect *or* treat in a certain way. (2) In many phrases with abl. of nouns implying emotions, treatment, &c.: *e.g.* **dolore afficere,** to irritate; annoy (2, l. 16); **supplicio afficere,** to punish (27, l. 15). These phrases often occur with the passive **afficior.**
**affīnĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Connection by marriage. See note on 18, l. 21.
**āfŭtūrus, -a, -um,** *fut. part.* of **absum** (*q.v.*).
**ăger, agri,** *m.* (1) Field. (2) Land; territory.
**ager Helvetius** = Helvetia.
**ager Noricus** = Noricum.
**aggrĕdĭor, -gressus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* Attack. (Often of open attack, as contrasted with **adorior**; but not always, *e.g.* 12, l. 10.)
**agmĕn, -ĭnis,** *n.* (1) Line of march. (2) Army on the march (for **primum, novissimum, agmen,** see Intr. § 49). See **claudere.**
**ăgo, ēgi, actum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Do. (2) Hold (**conventus,** 54, l. 8). (3) Negotiate; treat; confer (**cum aliquo,** 13, l. 8). (4) Tender (**gratias** = *i.e.* thank—**alicui,** 41, l. 4).
**ălăcrĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Zeal; ardour; eagerness.
**ālārii, -ōrum,** *m.* Troops posted on the wing (**āla**); hence auxiliary infantry = **auxilia.** See Intr. § 44.
**ălĭēnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Unfavourable (of ground, 15, l. 9).
**ălĭquamdĭu,** *adv.* For some time; for a considerable time.
**ălĭqui, aliqua, aliquod,** *indef. adj.* Some; any . . . at all (14, l. 5).
**ălĭquis, ălĭquid,** *indef. pron.* (1) Some; some one; some thing. (2) **Aliquid,** *n. acc.* used adverbially. To some extent; somewhat.
**ălĭus, -a, -ud,** *adj.* (1) Another. (2) (repeated in another case to indicate difference), one . . . one; another . . . another; each . . . a different. (See note on 39, l. 18.)
**Allŏbrŏges, -um,** *m. pl.* The Allobroges.
**ălo, -ŭi, -ĭtum** (*or* **-tum**), 3, *v. a.* Support; maintain.
**Alpes, -ĭum,** *f. pl.* The Alps.
**alter, -tĕra, -tĕrum,** *adj.* (gen. **alterius**). (1) The other (of two); a second. (2) **Alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other. (3) (As subst.) **alteri . . . alteri,** some . . . others. (4) (As subst.) **alter,** another.
**altĭtūdo, -ĭnis,** *f.* (1) Height. (2) Depth.
**altus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **altissimus.** (1) High. (2) Deep. (See note on 2, l. 9.)
**Ambarri, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* The Ambarri.
**āmentĭa, -ae,** *f.* Folly; madness.
**ămīcĭtĭa, -ae,** *f.* Friendship (between individuals or States).
**ămīcus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **amicissimus.** (1) Friendly. (2) (As subst.) A friend.
**āmitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* Lose.
**ămor, ōris,** *m.* Love.
**amplus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **amplior, amplius**; superl. **amplissimus, -a, -um.** (1) Great:

ample. (2) **Amplius**, *adj. nom. neuter* in 15, l. 23; see note. (3) **Amplius**, *adv. comp.* in 23, l. 5; with special construction, 38, l. 22; 41, l. 13; see note 38, l. 22. (4) **Amplissime** (43, l. 11), *superl. adv.* Most liberally; with the utmost generosity.

**an**, *conj.* Or. (Introducing a second member of an alternative question, direct or indirect.) See note on 47, l. 21.

**anceps, -cĭpĭtis**, *adj.* Double. See note on 26, l. 1.

**angustĭae, -ārum**, *f. pl.* (1) Narrowness. (2) A narrow place; pass; defile.

**angustus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Narrow; confined.

**animadverto, -verti, versum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To notice; observe: (i.) w. acc. of direct obj. 40, l. 1; (ii.) w. acc. and inf. 32, l. 3. (2) To punish. **animadvertere in aliquem** (19, l. 7). (See also **adverto**.)

**ănĭmus, -i**, *m.* (1) Feeling; disposition (6, l. 13). (2) Mind; intention. (In the phrase **mihi, tibi, sibi est in animo**, I, you, he, &c., intend, in 7, l. 11; 10, l. 1.) (3) Courage.

**annus, -i**, *m.* A year.

**annŭus, -a, -um**, *adj.* That lasts a year; for a year (of an annual magistracy).

**ante**, *adv.* Before; hitherto (in 18, l. 30; 16, l. 3; 3, l. 20).

**ante**, *prep.* Before; in front of (w. acc. (1) of place, 21, l. 10; (2) of time, 44, l. 26).

**antĕā**, *adv.* Previously; formerly.

**antīquus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (*superl.* **antiquissimus**). Ancient; former.

**ăpertus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Open; uncovered; exposed. (*P. part. pass.* of **aperio**.)

**appello, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Call; name; style.

**appĕto, -pĕtīvi** (**-pĕtĭi**), **-pĕtītum**, 3, *v. a.* Strive to win; desire eagerly.

**Aprīlis, -is**, *adj.* Of April.

**ăpud**, *prep. w. acc.* (1) With; among. (2) In the presence of. (3) In the hands of.

**Aquĭlēia, -ae**, *f.* Aquileia. See note on 10, l. 11.

**Aquītāni, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* The Aquitani.

**Aquītānĭa, -ae**, *f.* Aquitania, the country of the Aquitani.

**Arar, -ăris**, *m.* The river Arar (Saône). (*Acc. sing.* in 12, l. 7, **Ararim**.)

**arbĭtrĭum, -ĭi**, *n.* Judgment; as one thinks fit; at one's good will and pleasure.

**arbĭtror, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* Think; consider.

**arcesso, -cessīvi, -cessītum**, 3, *v. a.* Summon; call in to one's aid.

**Ariovistus, -i**, *m.* Ariovistus.

**arma, -ōrum**, *n. pl.* Arms.

**armo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Arm; equip.

**arrŏganter**, *adv.* Presumptuously; with arrogance.

**arrŏgantĭa, -ae**, *f.* Insolence; presumption.

**Arverni, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* The Arverni.

**arx, arcis**, *f.* Citadel; fortress; stronghold.

**ascendo, -di, -sum**, 3, *v. n.* Mount; ascend.

**ascensus, -ūs**, *m.* Ascent.

**at**, *conj.* But.

**atque, ac**, *conj.* (The form **ac** is used before consonants only: the form **atque** before vowels or consonants). (1) And. (2) Than. (3) As (28, l. 19).

**attingo, -tĭgi, -tactum**. 3, *v. a.* Reach; extend to; border on.

**attŭli**. See **affero**.

**auctōrĭtas, -ātis**, *f.* Weight, influence.

**auctus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Comp. **auctior**. Honoured; distinguished. (Properly the p. part. pass. of **augeo** used as an adj.)

**audācĭa, -ae**, *f.* Boldness, daring.

**audacter**, *adv.* Comp. **audacius**. Boldly.

**audĕo, ausus sum**, 2, *v. semi-dep.* Dare; venture.

**audiens, -entis**, *adj.* Obedient to —in the phrase **dicto audiens** (39, l. 36; 40, l. 41. See note. It is really pres. part. of **audio**).

**audĭo, -īvi, -ītum**, 4, *v. a.* Hear.

**augĕo, auxi, auctum**, 2 *v. a.* Increase.

**Aulus, i.** *m.* Aulus; a Roman name (praenomen. See Vocab. **Caesar**).
**aut,** *conj.* Or. **Aut . . . aut . . .** Either . . . or . . .
**autem,** *conj.* But.
**auxĭlĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Help; succour. (2) (In pl.) auxiliary troops; auxiliaries.
**ăvārĭtĭa, -ae,** *f.* Greed: rapacity.
**āversus, -a, -um,** *p. part. pass.* of **averto. Aversus hostis,** in 26, l. 6, = an enemy in retreat. (Literally, 'turned away'—*i.e.* showing his back.)
**āverto, -verti, -versum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Turn away. (2) Turn aside. (3) Alienate; estrange (20, l. 14).
**ăvus, i.** *m.* Grandfather.

**barbărus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Savage; uncivilised. As subst. **barbărus, i,** *m.* A savage; barbarian.
**Belgae, -ārum,** *m. pl.* The Belgae.
**bellĭcōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Martial; warlike.
**bello, -āvi -ātum, 1,** *v. n.* To wage war; fight.
**bellum, -i,** *n.* (1) War. (2) **Bellum gerere**; to wage war. (3) **Bellum alicui inferre**; to make war on. (4) **Bellum defendere**; ward off war—*i.e.* wage a defensive war.
**bĕnĕfĭcĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Favour; kindness.
**Bībracte, -is,** *n.* Bibracte. The capital of the Aedui, near Autun.
**bīdŭum, -i,** *n.* A space of two days; two days.
**bĭennĭum, -i,** *n.* A period of two years; two years.
**bĭpertīto,** *adv.* In two divisions.
**Bĭtŭrĭges, -um,** *m. pl.* The Bituriges.
**Bŏii, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* The Boii.
**bŏnĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Goodness; fertility.
**bŏnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **optimus.** (1) Good; favourable. (2) **bonum, i,** *n.* (the neut. of adj. used as subst.) A good thing; advantage.
**bracchĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* An arm.
**brĕvis, -e,** *adj.* Short.

**C.** Abbr. for **Gaius.**
**Caburus, -i,** *m.* C. Valerius Caburus, a Gallic noble, who had been made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus (47, l. 11).
**cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum,** 3, *v. n.* Fall; be killed.
**Caesar, -ăris,** *m.* Caesar. The name of a distinguished Roman family. The most famous member was the Dictator Gaius Iulius Caesar. Of the three names: (i) The **praenomen** is the name of the individual. (ii) The **nomen** is that of the *gens* or clan. (iii) The **cognomen** is that of the family of the *gens*.
**călămĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* (1) Disaster; disastrous defeat (**calamitatem accipere**, suffer, meet with disaster). (2) Misfortune 53, l. 24).
**căpĭo, cēpi, captum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Take. (2) Take captive; capture. (3) Take up (of arms). (4) Feel (of sensations). (5) **Initium capere,** begin (1, l. 17). (6) Take in; deceive; mislead. (7) Receive; collect (of tribute, 44, l. 7).
**captīvus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Captive. As subst. **captivus, -i,** *m.* A captive; prisoner of war.
**căput, -ĭtis,** *n.* (1) A head. (2) A person.
**carrus, -i,** *m.* A cart. See cut on p. 29.
**Cassĭānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Cassian, of Cassius.
**Cassĭus, -ii,** *m.* The name of a Roman *gens*, esp. Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. See note on 7, l. 14.
**castellum, -i,** *n.* A redoubt; fort.
**Casticus, -i,** *m.* A Sequanian noble.
**castra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.* A camp. See Intr. § 62 and plan on p. 21. (1) **Castra pōnĕre,** to pitch. (2) **Castra mŏvēre,** to break up; decamp, *i.e.* resume the march; march. (3) **Castra prōmŏvēre,** advance. (4) **Castra mūnīre,** intrench; construct a fortified camp. (5) **Castra hăbēre,** to take the field.
**cāsus, -ūs,** *m.* Chance.
**Catamantaloedes, -is,** *m.* Casticus's father, who had been King of the Sequanians.

**cătēna, -ae,** *f.* A chain; fetter (usually in plural, like our 'fetters').

**Cātŭrīges, -um,** *m. pl.* The Caturiges.

**causa, -ae,** *f.* (1) Cause; plea; reason. (2) **Causam interponere, inferre,** to bring forward a cause, reason (42, l. 16; 39, l. 18). (3) Sometimes a pretended cause; pretext (as in 39, l. 18). (4) A case (in legal sense). **Causam dicere,** to plead in one's defence; stand one's trial (hence **causae dictio**). (5) **Causam cognoscere,** see **cognoscere.** (6) **Causâ** (w. gen. of gerund), for the sake of; on account of.

**căvēo, cāvi, cautum,** 2, *v. n.* To be on one's guard.

**cĕlĕrĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Speed; swiftness.

**cĕlĕriter,** *adv.* Comp. **celerius** (see note on 48, l. 19); superl. **celerrime.** Swiftly; quickly.

**Celtae, -ārum,** *m.pl.* (1) The Celts. (2) (More particularly) the Gauls inhabiting central Gaul or Celtica.

**censēo, censŭi, censum,** 2, *v. a.* Resolve; decide (of the Senate, to pass a resolution).

**census, -ūs,** *m.* Registration; numbering; census.

**centum,** *num. adj. indecl.* 100.

**centŭrĭo, -ōnĭs,** *m.* A centurion. See Intr. § 52.

**certus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **certior;** superl. **certissimus, -a, -um.** Sure; certain; definite. (1) **Certiorem facio,** I inform. (2) **Certior fio,** I am informed (about, **de aliqua re,** *or* that, **acc.** and **inf.** clause).

**cētĕri, -ae, -a,** *adj. pl.* The others; the rest (as contrasted with some previously mentioned).

**Ceutrones, -um,** *m. pl.* The Ceutrones.

**cībārĭa, -ōrum,** *n. pl.* Rations; provisions.

**Cimberius, ii,** *m.* A German chieftain, joint leader with Nasua of the Suebi.

**Cimbri, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* The Cimbri.

**cingo, cinxi, cinctum,** 3 *v. a.* Surround; encompass; encircle.

**circĭnus, -i,** *m.* A pair of compasses.

**circĭter.** (1) *Adv.* About. (2) *Prep. w. acc.* About (of place or time).

**circŭĭtus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) A way round; circuit. (2) A roundabout way.

**circum,** *prep. w. acc.* (1) Round; round about. (2) In the neighbourhood of.

**circumdo, -dĕdi, -dătum,** 1, *v. a.* Surround; encircle; build round.

**circumdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* Draw round.

**circumsisto, -stĕti,** 3, *v. a.* Stand around.

**circumvĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum,** 4, *v. a.* Beset; surround (of enemies).

**cĭtĕrĭor, -us,** *comp. adj.* On the nearer side (*i.e.* nearer Rome. See **Gallia citerior**).

**citrā,** *prep. w. acc.* On this side of.

**citrō,** *adv.* See Vocab. **ultro.**

**cīvĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* (1) Citizenship; the position and privileges of a citizen (esp. of Rome). (2) **Civitate aliquem donare;** to confer the citizenship upon. (3) A State; independent community.

**claudo, -si, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To close. (2) **Agmen claudere;** to bring up the rear.

**clĭens, -entis,** *m.* (In pl.) vassals; dependents. See note on 4, l. 6.

**cŏacturus, cōactus, cŏēgi,**. See **cogo.**

**cŏĕmo, -ēmi, -emptum,** 3, *v. a.* To buy up.

**coepi, coepisse,** *v. defective* (pres. stem wanting). (1) To begin (w. inf.). (2) In pass. perfect tenses only, and always with inf. pass. (47, l. 2).

**cŏercĕo, -cŭi, -cĭtum,** 2, *v. a.* Repress; restrain.

**cōgĭto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Carefully consider; weigh; think over.

**cognosco, -gnōvi, -gnĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) (Pres. stem inceptive) learn; find out; gain information: esp. of military reconnoitring. (2) (Perf. stem) know (the source of information expressed by **a** w. abl.) (3) **Causam cognoscere.** To investigate a case judicially; examine (19, l. 22).

**cōgo, cŏēgi, cŏactum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To collect; assemble. (2) To compel.

**cŏhors, -tis**, *f.* A cohort. See Intr. § 46.
**cŏhortor, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* (1) Exhort; harangue. (2) Reassure.
**collātūrus, -a, -um**, *fut. part. of* **confero.**
**collĭgo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Fasten; pin together.
**collis, -is**, *m.* A hill.
**collŏco, -avi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) To post; station. (2) To settle. (3) To give a woman in marriage (sometimes w. **nuptum**).
**collŏcūtus, -a, -um**, *Perf. part.* **colloquor.**
**colloquĭum, -ĭi**, *n.* Conference; parley.
**collŏquor. -lŏcūtus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* To parley; hold a conference.
**combūro, -ussi, -ustum**, 3, *v. a.* To burn up; consume by fire.
**commĕātus, -ūs**, *m.* Military stores; supplies; provisions.
**commĕmŏro, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Call to mind; mention; recount.
**commĕo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. n.* To travel to and fro; **ad eos**—*i.e.* frequently visit them.
**commĭnus**, *adv.* Hand to hand; at close quarters.
**committo, -mīsi, -missum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) (w. **proelium**) To engage in. (2) To do wrong; commit some crime (14, l. 6). (3) (w. **ut** and subj.) Act in such a way that; bring it about that. (4) (**Aliquid alicui**). Entrust.
**commŏdē**, *adv.* Conveniently.
**commŏdus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Superl. **commodissimus.** (1) Convenient; suitable. (2) **Commodum**, *n. adj.* used as subst. Profit; advantage.
**Commŏnĕfăcĭo, -fēci, -factum**, 3, *v. a.* Remind; impress upon one.
**commŏvĕo, -mōvi, -mōtum**, 2, *v. a.* Move; affect; agitate; disquiet; disturb.
**commūnĭo, -īvi, -ītum**, 4, *v. a.* Fortify; intrench.
**commūnis, -e**, *adj.* Common.
**commūtātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Change.
**commūto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Change entirely.
**compăro, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) Make preparations; make ready. (2) Amass; get together.
**compāro, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Compare.
**compĕrĭo, -pĕri, -pertum**, 4, *v. a.* Find out; learn.
**complector, -plexus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* Embrace.
**complĕo, -ēvi, -ētum**, 2, *v. a.* Fill; occupy.
**complūres, -a**, *adj.* Several; a considerable number of.
**comporto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To bring together; convey; transport.
**cōnāta, -ōrum**, *n. pl.* Attempts; plans; undertakings. See note on 3, l. 26.
**cōnātus, -ūs**, *m.* Attempt.
**concēdo, -cessi, -cessum**, 3, *v. n.* and *v. a.* (1) (*v. n.*) Yield; give way. (2) (*v. a.*) Grant; permit. (3) (*v. a.*) Cede; grant (44, l. 6).
**concīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum**, 3, *v. a.* Cut to pieces; annihilate; destroy.
**concĭlĭo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) Win over. (2) Procure (3, l. 30).
**concĭlĭum, -ĭi**, *n.* An assembly; gathering; diet; council (**Concilium** is more concrete than **consilium**, and may be summoned for any purpose.)
**conclāmo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Shout; exclaim.
**concurro, -curri, -cursum**, 3, *v. n.* Run together.
**concursus, -ūs**, *m.* A running together; onset (of troops at close quarters).
**condĭcĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* (1) Condition (=state in which). (2) Conditions (=terms).
**condōno, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (**Aliquid alicui**) to forgive; overlook; pardon a person some offence.
**condūco, -duxi, -ductum**, 3, *v. a.* Bring together; assemble; collect.
**confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre**, *v. a.* (1) Collect; gather together. (2) (Bring together for comparison) compare. (3) **Se conferre.** Betake oneself; make one's way to. (4) Attribute to; lay to the charge of. (5) Postpone; defer (=*differo*).
**confertus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Superl. **con-**

**fertissimus.** Dense; close; compact.

**confĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Complete; accomplish; execute. (2) Draw up; write (29, l. 2).

**confīdo, -fīsus sum,** 3, *v. n. semidep.* (1) Firmly believe; feel confident (that, *inf.*). (2) (**Alicui**) rely upon; trust in; repose confidence in.

**confirmo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) Establish; confirm; ratify. (2) Fix. (3) Assure; promise; assert. (4) Comfort; encourage.

**congrĕdĭor, -gressus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) Come into contact with; meet. (2) Come into conflict with; fight.

**cōnĭcĭo, conieci, coniectum,** 3, *v. a.* Throw; cast; fling (**in catenas**, *e.g.*).

**coniungo, -xi, -ctum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To join; unite (*trans.*). (2) **Se conjungere,** join (*intrans.*) (**cum copiis**, *e.g.*).

**coniūrātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* (1) A conspiracy. (2) **Facere coniurationem.** To conspire; get up a conspiracy; plot.

**cōnor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* Attempt; endeavour; try (*w. inf.*).

**conquīro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum,** 3, *v. a.* Search out; collect.

**consanguĭnĕus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Related by blood. (2) (As subst.) **consanguinei, -orum,** *m. pl.*, kinsmen.

**conscisco, -scīvi, -scītum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To award to; inflict upon. (2) **Mortem sibi consciscere.** To commit suicide.

**conscĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Conscious of. (*Sibi*, w. the crime of which one feels guilty in the genitive.)

**conscrībo, -scripsi, -scriptum,** 3, *v. a.* Enrol; levy.

**consensus, -ūs,** *m.* Consent; agreement.

**consĕquor, -sĕcūtus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) Pursue; follow up. (2) Reach; attain to.

**Considius, -ii,** *m.* A soldier in Caesar's army.

**consīdo, -sēdi, -sessum,** 3, *v. n.* (1) Settle; establish one's self. (2) Pitch a camp; encamp.

**consĭlĭum, -ii,** *n.* (1) A council, esp. a council of war (more abstract than **concilium** [*q. v.*], referring rather to the matter in hand than to the people assembled. (2) Purpose; plan; design. (3) Stratagem.

**consisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum,** 3, *v. n.* To stand; be posted; halt.

**consōlor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To comfort; cheer; console.

**conspectus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) Sight; view. (2 **In conspectu.** Before the eyes of.

**conspĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum,** 3, *v. a.* Perceive; catch sight of; descry.

**conspĭcor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* See; perceive.

**constantĭa, -ae,** *f.* Firmness; resolution.

**constĭti.** *Perf. ind.* of **consisto.**

**constĭtŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Place; station. (2) Fix; appoint. (3) Resolve; determine; decide.

**consŭesco, -suēvi, -suētum,** 3, *v. n.* (1) (Pres. stem *inceptive.*) To become accustomed; get into the habit. (2) (Perf. stem.) To be in the habit; be wont. (In the perf. stem the syncopated forms **consueram, consuerim, consuesse,** &c., are commonly used.)

**consŭētūdo, -ĭnis,** *f.* Custom; practice.

**Consul, ŭlis,** *m.* A Consul. Two chief magistrates, called Consuls, with equal powers, were elected at Rome every year.

**consŭlātus, -us,** *m.* The office of Consul; consulship.

**consŭlo, -sulŭi, -sultum,** 3, *v. n.* (1) To consult; take counsel. (2) (In 53, l. 28, *perf. inf. pass.* is used impersonally) Counsel was taken: **consultum esse.**

**consultum, -i,** *n.* (1) Decree; decision; resolution. (2) Esp. **Senatus consultum.** A decree of the Senate.

**consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum,** 3, *v. a.* To waste; exhaust; destroy.

**contendo, -tendi, -tentum,** 3, *v. a.* and *n.* (1) (*v. a.*) Strive after; strive to effect. (31, l. 5, **id contendere, ne . . .**) (2) (*v. a.*) Strive

(*e.g.* 23, l. 10, **ire**). (3) (*v. n.*) Haste (*e.g.* 10, l. 9, where uses 2 and 3 both occur). (4) (*v. n.*) Fight; contend; measure one's strength with (**cum aliquo**).

**contentĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Contest; dispute.

**contĭnenter,** *adv.* Constantly; without intermission: uninterruptedly.

**contĭnĕo, -tĭnŭi, -tentum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) Bound; border; enclose (generally passive in this sense). (2) Hold back; restrain. (3) Confine (**exercitum castris**).

**contingo, -tĭgi, -tactum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) (*w. dat.*) touch; extend to. (2) (*w. dat.*) fall to the lot of; happen to (generally of good fortune). See note on 38, l. 25.

**contĭnŭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Continuous; consecutive; successive.

**contrā,** *adv.* and *prep.* (1) (*adv.*) Against; in opposition. (2) (*prep. w. acc.*) Against.

**contrăho, -traxi, -tractum,** 3, *v. a.* Collect; concentrate.

**contŭmēlĭa, -ae,** *f.* Affront; insult.

**convĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum,** 4, *v. a.*, *v. n.*, and *impers.* (1) (*v. a.*) To meet. (2) (*v. n.*) To come together; assemble. (3) (*v. n.*) **convenire ad aliquem**; to meet; (4) (*impers.*) **convenit**; it is agreed.

**conventus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) Meeting; assembly. (2) Court of justice; assizes. See Vocab. **ago.**

**converto, -verti, -versum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To turn round. (2) **Signa convertere.** To wheel round (of troops). (3) **In fugam aciem convertere.** To rout it; put it to flight.

**convinco, -vīci, -victum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To convict a person of a crime (**convincere aliquem alicuius**; the usual construction). (2) To prove a charge against a person (**convincere aliquam rem alicui**; *e.g.* 40, l. 45).

**convŏco, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To call together; assemble; summon.

**cōpĭa, -ae,** *f.* (1) A supply; plenty. (2) **Copiam frumenti facere.** To supply, furnish a supply of, corn. (3) A number. (4) (In plur. military forces; troops. (5) (In pl.) resources.

**cōpĭōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **copiosissimus.** Abundantly supplied; well stored.

**cōram,** *adv.* Present.

**cornu, -ūs,** *n.* The wing of an army.

**corpus, -ŏris,** *n.* A body.

**cŏtīdĭānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Happening every day; daily. (2) Every-day; customary.

**cŏtīdĭē,** *adv.* Daily; every day.

**Crassus, -i,** *n.* A Roman cognomen. See Vocab. **Caesar.** (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus, the wealthiest Roman; one of the Triumvirs of 60 B.C. (2) Publius Licinius Crassus, son of the Triumvir; one of Caesar's Legati.

**crĕmo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To burn.

**crĕo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To appoint; make (a magistrate, &c.).

**cresco, crēvi, crētum,** 3, *v. n.* To grow; grow great.

**crŭcĭātus, -ūs,** *m.* Torture.

**crūdēlĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Cruelty; barbarity.

**crūdēlĭter,** *adv.* Cruelly.

**cuius,** *gen. sing. of* **qui.**

**cuiusque,** *gen. sing. of* **quisque.**

**cultus, -ūs,** *m.* The comforts of civilisation. (See note on 1, l. 7.)

**cum,** *prep. w. abl.* (1) With (*i.e.* in the company of—*e.g.* **cum Germanis**). (2) With; attended by (of accompanying circumstances—*e.g.* 10, l. 5, **magno cum periculo**). (**Cum** is placed as an enclitic after personal and relative pronouns—*e.g.* **secum, quibuscum.**)

**cum,** *conj.* i. (*of time*). (1) When. (2) Whenever. [If **cum** is used strictly of time its verb is in the indicative—except that when the tense is imperfect or pluperfect the mood is subjunctive.] ii. (*of cause*). Since. [**Cum** in a causal sense always requires the subjunctive.] iii. (*concessive*). Although (*always with subjunctive*).

**cŭpĭdē,** *adv.* Comp. **cupidius**; superl. **cupidissime.** Eagerly.

**cŭpĭdĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Eager desire; eagerness; ambition.

**cŭpĭdus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Eager for; fond of (*w. gen.*).
**cŭpĭo, -īvi, -ītum,** 3, *v. a.* To favour; wish well to (18, l. 21, *w. dat.*).
**cūr,** *adv.* Why?
**cūra, -ae,** *f.* (1) Care; concern. (2) **Alicui curae esse.** To be somebody's concern; receive somebody's attention.
**cūro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To take care. (2) *frequent with acc. and gerundive—e.g.* **pontem faciendum, obsides dandos.** See note on 13, l. 2.
**cursus, -ūs,** *m.* Running; pace.
**custos, -ōdis,** *m.* Watch; spy.

**damno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Condemn.
**dē,** *prep. w. abl.* (1) (*of place*) From. (2) (*of persons*) From; of: **bene mereri de.** (3) (*of cause*) For (a reason); on (an account) (4) (*of time*) In the course of; during.
**dēbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To owe. (2) (*w. inf.*) Ought.
**dēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3, *v. n.* Withdraw; depart from (**de** *w. abl.*).
**dĕcem,** *num. adj. indecl.* Ten.
**dēcerto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To fight it out. (2) **Proelio decertare.** To fight a pitched battle.
**dēcĭdo, -cĭdi,** 3, *v. n.* To fall from.
**dĕcĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Tenth.
**dēcĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum,** 3, *v. a.* Deceive.
**dēclāro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Proclaim; announce.
**dĕcŭrĭo, -ōnis,** *m.* A decurion. See Intr. § 54.
**dēdĭtīcĭus, -ii,** *m.* A captive; prisoner of war; surrendered prisoner.
**dēdĭtĭo. -ōnis,** *f.* Surrender; capitulation.
**dēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To surrender.
**dēdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* Lead off; withdraw.
**dēfătīgo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Wear out; exhaust.
**dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To ward off (**bellum,** *i.e.* to wage a defensive war). (2) To defend (from **ab** *w.* **abl.**)
**dēfĕtiscor, -fessus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To become faint; exhausted.
**dēĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a.* To cast down from; deprive of; disappoint (**ea spe,** in that hope.)
**dēinde,** *adv.* Next; then.
**dēlībĕro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To consider; deliberate.
**dēlĭgo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Tie; fasten; moor.
**dēlĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum,** 3, *v. a.* Select; choose.
**dēmĭnŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* Take away from; diminish; curtail; impair.
**dēmitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To let down; lower; bow down. (2) **Demissus.** Bowed down (**caput**).
**dēmonstro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Show; declare; represent (*w. acc.* and *inf.*)
**dēmum,** *adv.* At length; at last. (See **tum.**)
**dēnĕgo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To refuse; deny (a request: **aliquid alicui**).
**dēni, -ae, -a,** *adj. distr. num.* Ten each.
**dēnĭque,** *adv.* Finally; at last.
**dēnuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To declare; intimate.
**dēperdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To lose.
**dēpōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Lay aside. (2) **Memoriam deponere** (**quod**). Forget (that).
**dēpŏpŭlor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To ravage; lay waste. (*Perf. part.* is sometimes used passively.)
**dēprĕcātor, -oris,** *m.* An intercessor.
**dēsĕro, -sĕrŭi, -sertum,** 3, *v. a.* Desert; abandon.
**dēsigno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To point out; to denote.
**dēsisto, -stĭti, -stĭtum,** 3, *v. n.* To cease; desist from; leave off (i. *w. inf.*; ii. *w. abl.*).
**dēspēro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To despair (of = **de** and **abl.**).
**dēspĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum,** 3, *v. a.* Despise; look down upon.
**dēstĭtŭo, -stĭtŭi, -stĭtūtum,** 3, *v. a.* Abandon.

**destringo, -strinxi, -strictum,** 3, *v. a.* Draw; unsheath.

**dēsum, -fŭi, -esse,** *v. n.* To fail; be wanting (*w. dat.*).

**dēsŭper,** *adv.* From above.

**dētĕrĭor, -ĭus,** *adj. compar.* (1) Inferior; poorer; worse. (2) **Deteriorem facere,** to lessen; diminish.

**dēterrĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. a.* To deter; hinder (from = **ne** and **subj.**).

**dētrăho, -traxi, -tractum,** 3, *v. a.* To take away; remove.

**dētrīmentum, -i,** *n.* Loss; injury.

**dĕus, -i,** *m.* A god

**dēvĕho, -vexi, -vectum,** 3, *v. a.* Bring down; convey.

**dexter, -tra, -trum,** *adj.* Right (opp. to left).

**dextra, -ae,** *f.* The right hand.

**dĭcĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Authority, sway; dominion.

**dīco, dixi, dictum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To say (that, *acc.* and *inf.*: often in pass. impersonally, **dictum est,** it is said). (2) To appoint (**diem**). (3) To plead (see Vocab. **causa**). (4) To speak (18, l. 5).

**dictĭo, -onis,** *f.* Pleading (*w. obj. gen.* **causae**: see **causam dicere**). **Causae dictio.** Pleading in defence; standing one's trial.

**dictum, -i,** *n.* An order; command. See Vocab. **audiens.**

**dĭdĭci,** *perf. ind. of* **disco.**

**dĭes, -ēi,** *m.* (but *f.* in sing. only of set days appointed for a special purpose). (1) A day. (2) Time (7, l. 21). (3) **Diem ex die.** Day after day.

**diffĕro, distŭli, dīlatum, differre,** *v. a.* To differ (from one another, **inter se**).

**diffĭcĭlis, -e,** *adj.* Difficult.

**dignĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Dignity; rank.

**dīlĭgentia, ae,** *f.* Care; diligence.

**dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* Break up; dismiss.

**dīrĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum,** 3, *v. a.* Break off; interrupt.

**discēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3 *v. n.* (1) Depart; march off; decamp. (2) Leave (**a** and **abl.**) (3) Swerve from; disregard (**a** and **abl.**).

**disciplīna, -ae,** *f.* Military discipline; training.

**disco, dĭdĭci,** 3, *v. a.* To learn.

**disĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a.* To disperse; rout.

**dispergo, -si, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* Scatter about; disperse

**dispōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To post, set, at intervals.

**dītissĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj. superl.* of **dives.**

**dĭū,** *adv.* Comp. **dĭutius.** (1) A long time; long. (2) **Quam diu.** As long.

**dĭūturnĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Long duration.

**dĭūturnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **diuturnior.** Lasting; long continued.

**dĭurnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* In the day time; by day.

**dīves, -ĭtis,** *adj.* Superl. **ditissimus**). Rich; wealthy.

**Divico, -ōnis,** *m.* An Helvetian chief who, in 107 B.C., fought against the Roman consul, L. Cassius Longinus, and, in 58 B.C., went as ambassador to Caesar.

**dīvĭdo, -vīsi, -vīsum,** 3, *v. a.* Divide; separate.

**Divitiăcus, -i,** *m.* An Aeduan noble who was the head of the Roman party in that State, and a friend of Caesar, Cicero, and other prominent Romans. His brother was Dumnorix.

**do, dĕdi, dătum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) Give. (2) Grant. (3) Administer (an oath). (4) Inflict (**poenas**).

**dŏcĕo, -cŭi, -ctum,** 2, *v. a.* Inform; explain.

**dŏlĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. n.* To suffer pain; be afflicted (**ex** and **abl.** to express the source of the sorrow).

**dŏlor, -ōris,** *m.* Pain; anger; resentment.

**dŏlus, -i,** *m.* Craft; stratagem.

**dŏmĭcĭlĭum, -i,** *n.* Dwelling; abode.

**dŏmus, -ūs,** *f.* (1) House; home. (2) (Locative forms) **domi,** at home: **domum,** homewards; **domo,** from home.

**dōno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To present with; bestow upon (**aliquem aliqua re**: see Vocab. **civitas**).

**Dūbis, -is,** *m.* The river Doubs, a tributary flowing into the Saône from the E

**dŭbĭtātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Doubt; hesitation.
**dŭbĭto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To doubt (that = **quin** and **subj.** in *negative* sentences only).
**dŭbĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Doubtful; (2) **Non est dubium quin.** There is no doubt that.
**dŭcenti, -ae, -a,** *num. adj.* Two hundred.
**dūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To draw (waggons, &c.). (2) To lead (troops, &c.). (3) **Ducere uxorem.** To marry. (4) **In matrimonium ducere.** To marry. (5) To reckon; think; consider. (6) To put off. (7) Prolong (38, l. 15).
**dum,** *conj.* (1) While (*w. indic.*). (2) Until (*w. subj.*).
**Dumnŏrix, -ĭgis,** *m.* An Aeduan noble, brother of Divitiacus: he was the head of the patriotic or anti-Roman party.
**dŭŏ, -ae, -ŏ,** *num. adj.* Two.
**dŭŏdĕcim,** *num. adj. indecl.* Twelve.
**dŭŏdēvīgĭnti,** *num. adj. indecl.* Eighteen.
**dūrus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **durior, -ius.** (1) Hard; severe. (2) Adverse.
**dux, dŭcis,** *c.* (1) General; leader; commander. (2) Guide.

**e.** See **ex.**
**ĕa,** *n. pl.* of **is.** Those things.
**ēdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To produce; cause; (and so of cruelties) to commit; perpetrate (31, l. 49).
**ēdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* March forth; lead out.
**effēmĭno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To make effeminate; enervate.
**effĕro, extŭli, ēlātum, efferre,** *v. a.* (1) To carry, take away (5, l. 9). (2) To spread abroad (46, l. 10).
**effĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum,** 3, *v. a.* To make or render so and so (*w. two accs.* 38, l. 26, **hunc** [**montem**], **arcem.**
**ēgi,** *perf. ind.* of **ago.**
**ĕgo, mĕi,** *pers. pron.* I.
**ēgrĕdĭor, -gressus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To march out of; leave (w. **e** and **abl.**).
**ēgrĕgĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Distinguished; eminent.
**eisdem,** *dat.* or *abl. pl.* of **idem.**
**eius,** *gen. sing.* of **is.**
**ēlātus, -a, -um,** *perf. part. pass.* of **effero.**
**ēmigro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To depart from.
**ēmitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* To let go; throw away.
**ĕmo, ēmi, emptum,** 3, *v. a.* To buy; purchase.
**ĕnim,** *conj.* For. (Its usual place is after the first word of the sentence.)
**ēnuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To disclose; divulge.
**ĕō,** *abl. sing. m.* and *n.* of **is** (*q. v.*).
**ĕō,** *adv.* (1) To that place; thither. (2) For that reason. (3) = on them (*i.e.* the *raedae* in 51, l. 22, and on the horses in 42, l. 18).
**ĕo, īvi** or **ĭi, ĭtum, īre,** *v. n.* To go; march.
**ĕōdem,** *abl. sing. m.* and *n.* of **idem.**
**ĕōdem,** *adv.* (1) To the same place. (2) To the same end.
**ĕos,** *acc. pl. m.* of **is.**
**ĕosdem,** *acc. pl., m.* of **idem.**
**ĕquĕs, -ĭtis,** *m.* A horse-soldier; trooper.
**ĕquester, -tris, -tre,** *adj.* Cavalry.
**ĕquĭtātus, -ūs,** *m.* Cavalry.
**ĕquus, -i,** *m.* (1) A horse. (2) **Equo admisso.** See Vocab. **admitto.** (3) **Ex equo, ex equis.** See Vocab. **ex.** (4) **Ad equum rescribere.** See Vocab. **rescribo.**
**ērĭpĭo, -rĭpŭi, -reptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Snatch away; deprive (from, of, **dat.**). (2) Rescue; deliver (from, **e** and **abl.**). (3) **Se eripere.** To run away; escape.
**et,** *conj.* (1) And. (2) **Et . . . et . . .**; both . . . and . . .
**ĕtĭam,** *conj.* (1) Also. (2) Even. (3) **Quin etiam.** See Vocab. **quin.**
**ĕtĭamsi,** *conj.* Even if.
**etsi,** *conj.* Although.
**ēvello, -velli, -vulsum,** 3, *v. a.* To pluck out.
**ex, e,** *prep. w. abl.* (*Ex* more usual than *e*, and always before vowels.) (1) From; out of; from among. (2) **Ex vinclis,** in chains. **Ex equo, ex equis,** on horseback. (See note on 4, l. 2.) (3) **Una, altera, qua, ex parte.** On one,

&c., side. (4) **Ex itinere**, during the march. (5) In accordance with. **Ex usu**, *i.e.* beneficial, advantageous. (6) After. **Ex die.**

**excĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum**, *v. a.* (1) To receive. (2) To sustain, withstand (**impetum**).

**exemplum, -i**, *n.* (1) Precedent. (2) Warning example; exemplary punishment; severity.

**exĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum**, 4, *v. n.* To depart; withdraw from; leave (*de*, *e*, *domo*, &c.).

**exercĕo, -cŭi, -cĭtum**, 2, *v. a.* Train; exercise; drill.

**exercĭtātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Training; practice.

**exercĭtātus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Superl. **exercitatissimus**). Highly trained; exercised.

**exercĭtus, -ūs**, *m.* An army.

**existĭmātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Opinion.

**existĭmo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. n.* To think.

**expĕdītus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Comp. **expĕditior, -ĭus.** (1) Unimpeded, (and so) easy; convenient (of roads, &c.). (2) (Of troops) in light order. See Intr. § 61.

**expĕrĭor, -pertus sum**, 4. *v. dep.* (1) Make trial; make an attempt. (2) Undergo; experience.

**explōrātor, -ōris**, *m.* A spy; scout.

**exprĭmo, -pressi, -pressum**, 3, *v. a.* Extract, elicit.

**expugno, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To reduce; take by storm.

**exquīro, -sīvi, -sītum**, 3, *v. a.* To search out; ascertain.

**exsĕquor, -sĕcūtus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* To follow up; assert; maintain.

**exspecto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* Wait; await.

**extrā**, *prep. w. acc.* Beyond, outside of.

**extrēmus, -a, -um**, *adj. superl.* of **exter, exterior.** (1) Farthest; most remote. (2) (As subst.) **extremum, -i**, *n.* The farthest limit.

**exūro, -ussi, -ustum**, 3, *v. a.* Consume by fire; burn up.

**Făbĭus, -ĭi**, *m.* A Roman name of a distinguished *gens* (**nomen**. See Vocab. **Caesar**). Esp. Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus, who conquered the Allobroges, Arverni and Ruteni in 121 B.C.

**facĭle**, *adv.* Comp. **făcĭlĭus.** Easily.

**făcĭlis, -e**, *adj.* Easy.

**făcĭnus, -ŏris**, *n.* A misdeed, crime.

**făcĭo, fēci, factum**, *v. a.* and *n.* I. (*a.*). (1) To act; do; make; perform (in various meanings according to the contexts. (2) Make; build; construct (**pontem, castra, rates, munitionem**). (3) **Coniurationem facere**; to form. (4) **Sementes facere**—*i.e.* to sow. (5) **Iter facere**; to march. (6) **Proelium facere**; join; engage in. (7) **Finem facere**; put an end to; end. (8) **Senatus consulta facere**; pass. (9) **Iniuriam facere**; to do; inflict. (10) **Iudicium facere**; to form. (11) **Copiam facere.** See Vocab. **copia.** (12) **Potestatem sui facere.** See **potestas.** (13) **Periculum facere.** See Vocab. **periculum.** (II.) With two accusatives. (14) To render. See Vocab. **deterior** and **certus.** III. (*n.*) (15) To act (**arroganter**).

**factĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* A party; faction.

**factum, -i**, *n.* A deed; act.

**făcultas, -ātis**, *f.* (1) Power; opportunity. (2) Store; abundance. (3) (*pl.*). Means; resources.

**fămes, -is**, *f.* Hunger.

**fămĭlĭa, -ae**, *f.* The slaves in a household; slaves.

**fămĭlĭāris, -e**, *adj.* (1) Belonging to a household; family; domestic. (2) **Res familiaris.** See Vocab. **res.** (3) (As subst.) **familiaris, -is**, *m.* A friend.

**fas**, *n. indecl.* The will of heaven.

**fātum, -i**, *n.* Lot; destiny; fate.

**făvĕo, făvi, fautum**, *v. n.* To be favourable to; favour (*w. dat.*).

**fēlīcĭtas, -ātis**, *f.* Good fortune.

**fĕrē**, *adv.* Almost.

**fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre**, *v. a.* (1) To bear; carry; bring. (2) Endure; tolerate. (3) (*w. an adv.*) To take a thing in a certain way, *e.g.* **gravius ferre**, to be more annoyed. (4) **Impune aliquid ferre.**

To do a thing with impunity; escape the consequences of.

**ferrum**, **-i**, *n.* (1) Iron. (2) An iron weapon, *e.g.* the head of a javelin.

**fĕrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* Wild; savage; barbarous.

**fĭdes**, **-ēi**, *f.* (1) Trust; confidence. (2) Loyalty; fidelity. (3) Plighted word; assurance.

**fīlĭa**, **-ae**, *f.* Daughter.

**fīlĭus**, **-i**, *m.* Son.

**fingo**, **finxi**, **fictum**, 3, *v. a.* To compose (**vultum**).

**fīnis**, **-is**, *m.* (1) End. (2) **Finem facere**. See Vocab. **facio**. (3) Border; frontier. (4) (*pl.*) Country; territory.

**fīnĭtĭmus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* (1) Bordering on; adjoining (*w. dat.*). (2) (As subst.) **finitimi**, **-orum**, *m.* Neighbours.

**fĭo**, **factus sum**, **fĭĕri** (*an irreg. verb used as the pass. of* **facio**). (1) To be made; done; to become. (2) **Fieri ut** (*subj.*). To result that . . . (3) **Certior fio**. See Vocab. **certus**. (4) (*with secondary predicate*) **Aeduos stipendiarios esse factos** is really the passive of use 14 of **facio** (factitive).

**firmus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* Superl. **firmissimus**. Strong; powerful.

**Flaccus**, **-i**, *m.* A Roman family name (cognomen: see Vocab. **Caesar**), esp. Gaius Valerius Flaccus, who was Governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.

**flāgĭto**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To demand with insistence; insist upon.

**flĕo**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, 2, *v. n.* To weep.

**flētus**, **-ūs**, *m.* Weeping; tears.

**flōrens**, **-entis**, *adj.* Superl. **florentissimus**. Flourishing; prosperous.

**flūmen**, **-ĭnis**, *n.* A river.

**flŭo**, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, 3, *v. n.* To flow.

**fŏre**, *fut. inf. of* **sum**. (Fore, w. **ut** and subj., is often used as a periphrasis for the future infinitive active or passive: *e.g.* 42, l. 9).

**fortis**, **-e**, *adj.* Superl. **fortissimus**. Brave; strong.

**fortĭtūdo**, **-ĭnis**, *f.* Bravery; valour.

**fortūna**, **-ae**, *f.* (1) Lot; fortune. (2) (*pl.*) Goods; possessions.

**fossa**, **-ae**, *f.* A fosse; trench.

**frango**, **frēgi**, **fractum**, 3, *v. a.* To break; subdue; dishearten.

**frāter**, **-tris**, *m.* Brother.

**frāternus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* Of brother, brotherly.

**frīgus**, **-ŏris**, *n.* (1) Cold. (2) (*pl.*) Cold weather; cold climate.

**fructŭōsus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* Superl. **fructuosissimus**. Fruitful; productive.

**frūges**, **-um**, *f. pl.* Crops of all kinds; the fruits of the earth.

**frūmentārĭus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* (1) Of or belonging to corn. **Res frumentaria**. A supply of corn, corn. (2) Rich in corn.

**frūmentum**, **-i**, *n.* (1) (*sing.*) Cut corn; corn; grain. (2) (*pl.*) Standing corn; crops.

**fŭi**, &c. See **sum**.

**fŭga**, **-ae**, *f.* (1) Flight. (2) **Se fugae mandare**. To take to flight. (3) **In fugam conicere**. To put to flight; rout. (4) **In fugam convertere**. See **converto**.

**fŭgĭo**, **fūgi**, **fŭgĭtum**, 3, *v. n.* To fly; to take to flight.

**fŭgĭtīvus**, **-i**, *m.* A runaway slave.

**fundo**, **fūdi**, **fūsum**, 3, *v. a.* To rout.

**fŭror**, **-ōris**, *m.* Madness.

**fŭtūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *fut. partic. of* **sum**. **Futurum esse** (or **fore**), the fut. inf. of **sum**, is often used w. **ut** and subj. as a periphrasis of the future inf. act. or passive.

**Găbīnĭus**, **-ĭi**, *m.* A Roman name (**nomen**. See Vocab. **Caesar**), esp. Aulus Gabinius, consul in 61 B.C.

**Gāĭus**, **-i**, *m.* A Roman praenomen. (See Vocab. **Caesar**.)

**Galli**, **-ōrum**, *m.* The Gauls. (1) (*in the widest sense*). All men of Celtic race: including, *e.g.*, the Helvetii. (2) (*in a narrower sense*). The inhabitants of central Gaul (**Celtica**)—also called Celtae.

**Gallĭa**, **-ae**, *f.* Gaul, the land of the Gauls. 1. (*in the widest sense*). Including (i.) Gallia ulterior, (ii.)

Gallia citerior. 2. (*Independent*). Gaul, *i.e.* all Gallia ulterior except the Provincia. 3. (*in a narrower sense*) Celtica, the land of the Celtae, or Gauls proper. (4) **Gallia ulterior** (or Transalpina) —further, or Transalpine Gaul: included Modern France, the Netherlands, Germany west of the Rhine, and most of Switzerland. It falls into four divisions. (*a*) **Belgium**: the land of the Belgae in the N. (*b*) **Celtica** (or Gallia, 3), Central Gaul, the land of the Celtae or Galli, lying S. of Belgium. (*c*) **Aquitania**, the land of the Aquitani in the S.W. (*d*) **Gallia provincia** (or simply **provincia**). The Roman province in the S., extending from the Cevennes to the coast, E. to Geneva, and W. to Toulouse. (5) **Gallia citerior** (or **cisalpina**), Nearer (*i.e.* to Rome), or Cisalpine Gaul, *i.e.* North Italy both sides of the Po, and including roughly the basin of that river. The river Rubicon was the southern boundary on the E., or Adriatic side.

**Gallĭcus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Of the Gauls; Gallic; Celtic.

**Gărumna, -ae**, *m.* The river Garonne.

**Genāva, -ae**, *f.* Geneva.

**gĕnĕrātim**, *adv.* By tribes.

**gĕnus, -ĕris**, *n.* (1) Race; family. (2) Kind; character.

**Germāni, -ōrum**, *m.* The Germans; a general name for the Teutonic tribes living east of the Rhine and north of the Danube.

**gĕro, gessi, gestum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To bear; carry. (2) Carry on; wage (**bellum**). (3) Transact; carry on; conduct (**rem**).

**glădĭus, -ĭi**, *m.* A sword. See Intr. § 59, and illustr. p. 48.

**glōrĭa, -ae**, *f.* Glory; renown.

**glōrĭor, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* Boast of; brag about (*w. abl.*).

**Graecus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Greek

**Graiŏcĕli, -ōrum**, *m.* A Celtic tribe living near Mont Cenis.

**grandis, -e**, *adj.* Large.

**gratĭa, -ae**, *f.* (1) Influence; popularity. (2) Favour; friendship. (3) Thanks. (4) **Gratiam referre.** To show one's gratitude; return thanks. (5) **Gratias agere alicui.** To thank.

**grātŭlātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Rejoicing; congratulation.

**grātŭlor, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To congratulate.

**grātus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Welcome; pleasing; acceptable.

**grăvis, -e**, *adj.* Comp. **gravior** Grievous; hard; severe.

**grăvĭter**, *adv.* Comp. **gravius.** Severely; vehemently.

**grăvor, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To take offence; be annoyed.

**hăbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum**, 2, *v. a.* (1) To have; possess; hold. (2) To take (a census). (3) To deliver (a speech). (4) Consider; look upon as. (5) **Castra habere.** See Vocab. **castra**.

**Harūdes, -um**, *m.* A German tribe who joined Ariovistus. (Their original home is supposed to be Jutland.)

**Helvētĭi, -ōrum**, *m.* The Helvetii, a Celtic people living in West Switzerland by Lake Geneva.

**Helvētĭus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Of the Helvetii; Helvetian. (2) **Ager Helvetius.** See Vocab. **ager.**

**hībĕrna, -ōrum**, *n.* (sc. **castra**). A winter camp, winter-quarters.

**hĭc, haec, hoc**, *pron. demonstr.* This; these. (1) Adjectivally with a noun. (2) Without noun; **hi**, these peoples; **haec**, these things. (3) **hoc**, *abl. n. sing.* (w. comparatives and *quod*). On this account.

**hīc**, *adv.* Here.

**hĭĕmo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. n.* To pass the winter; winter.

**Hispānĭa, -ae**, *f.* Spain.

**hŏmo, -ĭnis**, *c.* (1) A human being; man. (2) (In a contemptuous sense) the man; the fellow.

**hŏnestus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Superl. **honestissimus.** Distinguished; honourable.

**hŏnor, -ōris**, *m.* (1) Esteem; honour. (2) (*Pl.*) offices in the service of the State.

**hŏnōrĭfĭcus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Honourable.

**hōra, -ae,** *f.* An hour. (Sunrise to sunset = 12 *horae*. The length of the Roman hour, therefore, varied with the time of year.)
**horrĕo, -ŭi,** 2, *v. a.* (more often *v. n.*). To dread; shudder at.
**hortor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To urge; exhort.
**hospĕs, -ĭtis,** *m.* (1) A host. (2) A guest; friend.
**hospĭtĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Right of hospitality. (A friendly relation existing between States or individuals, by which they engaged to give mutual hospitality.)
**hostis, -is,** *c.* A public enemy; enemy. See Vocab. **inimicus.**
**hūc,** *adv.* Hither.
**hūmānĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Refinement.

**ĭbi,** *adv.* There.
**ictus, -ūs,** *m.* Blow; stroke.
**īdem, ĕadem, ĭdem,** *pron.* (1) The same. (2) **ĭdem,** *n.* The same thing. (3) **idĕm . . . qui.** The same . . . as.
**ĭdĕo,** *adv.* For that reason.
**ĭdōnĕus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Suitable (for, w. dat.).
**īdūs, -ŭum,** *f.* The Ides (15th day of March, May, July, October: 13th of all other months.) See Vocab. **Kalendae.**
**ignis, -is,** *m.* Fire.
**ignōro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To be ignorant; not to know.
**ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum,** 3, *v. a.* To pardon (**alicui**).
**illātūrus, illātus,** *fut. act. and past pass. parts.* from **infero.**
**ille, -a, -ud,** *pron. dem.* (1) That yonder; that. (2) He, she, it; they.
**illic,** *adv.* (1) There; (2) = among that people.
**immortālis, -e,** *adj.* Immortal.
**impĕdīmentum, -i,** *n.* (1) A hindrance. (2) (*pl.*) The heavy baggage of an army. See Intr. § 60.
**impĕdĭo, -īvi, -ītum,** 4, *v. a.* (1) To embarrass; impede; hinder. (2) **impĕdīti,** of troops encumbered with baggage (the opposite of **expediti,** *q.v.* and Intr. § 61).
**impello, -pŭli, -pulsum,** 3, *v. a.* To drive; impel; urge.
**impendĕo,** 2, *v. n.* To overhang.
**impĕrātor, -ōris,** *m.* General; commander-in-chief.
**impĕrītus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Ignorant; unskilled; inexperienced (in, w. **gen.**).
**impĕrĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Sway; dominion; authority. (2) Government; command.
**impĕro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To command; bear rule (absolutely). (2) To command (**alicui**). (3) (with the command expressed) Command (**ut** and subj.; **ne** and subj.; infin. *passive*). (4) To requisition from (**aliquid alicui**).
**impĕtro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To gain one's request; obtain; procure (from, **a** and abl.).
**impĕtus, -ūs,** *m.* An attack; assault.
**implōro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) Beg; implore (**aliquid ab aliquo**). (2) Entreat not to . . . (**ne** and **subj.**).
**impōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To set; mount on (*see* **eo,** *adv.* 3). (2) To impose (tribute, &c.) upon (**alicui**).
**importo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To import.
**imprŏbus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Bad; unprincipled.
**imprōvīsō,** *adv.* Suddenly; unexpectedly.
**impugno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To attack; assail.
**impūnē,** *adv.* With impunity.
**impūnĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Impunity.
**in,** *prep. w. abl. and acc.* (1) (*w. abl.*) i. In. ii. Among. iii. Under (**armis**). iv. Over (**Arare,** *of bridges*). (2) (*w. acc.*) i. To. ii. Into. iii. Towards (*of feelings*). iv. For (*of time*). v. In (see Vocab. **modus**). vi. Against (*of hostile act or feeling*: so **animadvertere in aliquem**).
**incendo, -di, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* To burn; set fire to.
**incĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum,** 3, *v. n.* To meet; fall in with; come across (**in aliquem**).
**incĭto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To rouse; excite; spur.

**incŏlo, -cŏlŭi,** 3, *v. a.* and *n.* (1) *a.* To inhabit. (2) *n.* To live; dwell.
**incolŭmis, -e,** *adj.* Still alive; safe and sound.
**incommŏdum, -i,** *n.* A misfortune; disaster.
**incrēdĭbĭlis, -e,** *adj.* Extraordinary; incredible.
**incūso, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* Find fault with; upbraid.
**inde,** *adv.* Thence.
**indĭcĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Information; informers. (See note on 4, l. 1.)
**indīco, -dixi, -dictum,** 3, *v. a.* To appoint.
**indūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To influence; move.
**indulgĕo, -si, -tum,** 2, *v. n.* To be indulgent to; indulge (**alicui**).
**inermis, -e,** *adj.*; less usual form, **inermus, -a, -um.** Unarmed; ill armed.
**infĕrĭor, -ĭus,** *adj. comp.* Lower.
**infero, intŭli, illātum, inferre,** *v. a.* (1) To bring; carry in. (2) **Bellum inferre alicui.** To wage war against. (3) **Signa inferre.** See Vocab. **signa.** (4) To inflict (**vulnera, calamitatem**). (5) To allege (**causam**).
**inflecto, -exi, -exum,** 3, *v. a.* To bend.
**inflŭo, -xi, -xum,** 3, *v. n.* To flow; fall into (**in** and acc.).
**ingens, -tis,** *adj.* Huge; vast; immense.
**īnĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a* To infuse; inspire into (**alicui**).
**ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Unfriendly; hostile. (2) (As subst.) **inimicus, -i,** *m.* A private enemy; enemy. (See Vocab. **hostis.**)
**ĭnīquus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Unfair; unjust.
**ĭnĭtĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* A beginning; commencement.
**iniūrĭa, -ae,** *f.* (1) Violence: wrongdoing. (2) (Often *pl.*) Injurious acts; wrongs. (3) **iniūria** (*abl.* used adverbially). Wrongfully; unjustly.
**iniussu,** *m.* Defect. noun with only *abl. s.* Without order from (person whose orders, expressed by (i.) possessive adj., (ii.) genitive)

**innascor, -nātus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To spring up; arise in.
**innŏcentĭa, -ae,** *f.* (1) Innocence. (2) Disinterestedness.
**ĭnŏpĭa, -ae,** *f.* Want.
**ĭnŏpīnans, -antis,** *adj.* Not expecting; off one's guard.
**inquīro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum,** 3, *v. a.* To inquire.
**inscĭens, -entis,** *adj.* Not knowing; without the knowledge of.
**insĕquor, -sĕcūtus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To pursue; follow after.
**insĭdĭae, -ārum,** *f. pl.* Stratagem; craft.
**insigne, -is,** *n.* A distinguishing badge; accoutrements.
**insignis, -e,** *adj.* Signal.
**insĭlĭo, -ŭi,** 4, *v. n.* To leap upon (**in** and **acc.**).
**insŏlenter,** *adv.* Haughtily; insolently.
**instĭtŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* To teach; train.
**instĭtūtum, -i,** *n.* Habits; mode of life; institutions.
**insto, -stĭti, -stātum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To be at hand; draw near. (2) Press on.
**instrŭo, -xi, -ctum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To draw up (a battle array).
**intellĕgo, -lexi, lectum,** 3 *v. a.* (1) To perceive; understand. (2) To know (20, l. 20; 33, l. 11, only pres. and imperf. in this sense).
**inter,** *prep. w. acc.* (1) Among; between (of space). (2) During (of time). (3) **Inter se,** (i.) mutually; (ii.) from one another (*e.g.* with **differunt,** 1, l. 4). See note on 3, l. 31.
**intercēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3, *v. n.* (1) To intervene; pass. (2) To lie between. (3) To exist between (of friendship &c.—dat. and *cum* w. *abl.* of the two parties).
**interclūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum,** 3, *v. a.* To cut off (from, *abl.*).
**interdīco, -dixi, -dictum,** 3, *v. a.* To prohibit; order out of (**alicui, aliqua re**).
**interdĭu,** *adv.* During the day; in the daytime.
**interdum,** *adv.* At times; sometimes.

**intĕrĕā**, *adv.* In the meantime; meanwhile.
**interfĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum**, 3, *v. a.* To slay; kill.
**intĕrim**, *adv.* In the meantime; meanwhile.
**intermitto, -mīsi, -missum**, 3, *v. a.* and *n.* (1) (*a.* To place an interval between; to interrupt; pause in. (2) (*a.*) To allow time to elapse. (Hence such phrases as **triduo intermisso, nocte intermissa**; after an interval of three days, a night. (3) (*n.*) To leave a gap; be interrupted.
**internĕcio, -ōnis**, *f.* Massacre; slaughter; utter destruction.
**interpello, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To hinder; molest.
**interpōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum**, 3, *v. a.* To put forward; allege (**causam**).
**interprēs, -ĕtis**, *c.* An interpreter.
**intersum, -fŭi, -esse**, *v. n.* To intervene; lie between (of space).
**intervallum, -i**, *n.* Distance between; interval.
**intrā**, *prep. w. acc.* Within.
**intŭĕor, -tŭĭtus sum**, 2, *v. dep.* To gaze at; look at.
**intŭli.** See **infero.**
**invĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum**, 4, *v. a.* To find; discover.
**invictus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Unconquered.
**invīto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To invite.
**invītus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Unwilling. (2) (frequently in abl. abs.) **eo, se, invito**; without his consent. **Sequanis invitis,** without the consent of the Sequanians.
**ipse, -a, -um**, *pron. demonstr.* (1) Self. (2) Himself; herself; themselves. (3) Indeed.
**īrācundus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Passionate.
**irrīdĭcŭlē**, *adv.* Without humour.
**is, ĕa, id**, *pron. demonstr.* (1) He; she; it; they; **id,** this thing; **ea,** those things. (2) That.
**ĭta**, *adv.* (1) Thus; so; in such a manner. (2) To such a degree.
**Itălĭa, -ae**, *f.* (1) Italy. (2) (10, l. 9), N. Italy—*i.e.* Gallia Citerior.
**ĭtăque**, *conj.* Accordingly.
**ĭtem**, *adv.* Also; moreover.
**ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕris**, *n.* (1) A march. (2) A route.
**ĭtĕrum**, *adv.* (1) A second time; again. (2) See **semel.**
**ĭtūrus, -a, -um**, *fut. part. of* **eo.**

**iacto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) To toss; swing about. (2) To discuss.
**iam**, *adv.* (1) Now. (2) Already.
**iŭba, -ae**, *f.* A mane.
**iŭbĕo, iussi, iussum**, 2, *v. a.* To order; command (*w. inf.*).
**iūdĭcĭum, -ii**, *n.* (1) Trial. (2) Decision; opinion (on, **de aliqua re**).
**iūdĭco, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) To decide; to determine. (2) To form an opinion (on, **de aliqua re**); make up one's mind (that, **acc.** and **inf.**). (3) Judge to be; consider.
**iŭgum, -i**, *n.* A yoke. (2) (Hence) the yoke. See note on 7, l. 16. (3) A ridge; height; summit.
**iūmentum, -i**, *n.* A beast of burden; draught horse or mule.
**iungo, iunxi, iunctum**, 3, *v. a.* To join; fasten together.
**Iūra, -ae**, *m.* The Jura mountains. (The range formed the boundary between the Helvetii and the Sequani.)
**iūro, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. n.* To take an oath; swear.
**iūs, iūris**, *n.* (1) Right; legal right. (2) **In suo iūre.** In the exercise of his right.
**iusiūrandum, iurisiurandi**, *n.* An oath.
**iustĭtĭa, -ae**, *f.* Justice; upright conduct.
**iustus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Right; proper.
**iŭvo, iūvi, iūtum**, 1, *v. a.* To aid; assist.

**Kālendae, -ārum**, *f.* The Calends the first day of the month. (The Calends, Nones and Ides were three fixed days in the Roman month; all other days were reckoned as so many days before the Nones, Ides or Kalends [of the following month], as the case might be.) See Roman Calendar in *Rev. L. Pr.* p. 216.

**L.** Abbr. for Lucius.
**Lăbĭēnus, -i,** *m.* A Roman name, esp. Titus Atius Labienus, Caesar's most able *legatus* in Gaul. In the Civil War he turned traitor, went over to the Pompeians, and was killed at Munda, 45 B.C.
**lăbor, -ōris,** *m.* Trouble; exertion.
**lăbōro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To strive; to exert one's self. (2) To be in distress; hard pressed.
**lăcesso, -īvi, -ītum,** 3, *v. a.* To attack; harass.
**lăcrĭma, -ae,** *f.* A tear.
**lăcus, -ūs,** *m.* A lake.
**lăpis, -ĭdis,** *m.* A stone.
**largĭor, -ītus sum,** 4, *v. dep.* To bribe.
**largĭter,** *adv.* (1) Greatly. (2) **Largiter posse.** See Vocab. **possum.**
**largītĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Munificence; liberality.
**lātē,** *adv.* Widely; far and wide.
**lātĭtūdo, -ĭnis,** *f.* Width; breadth.
**Latovici, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A German tribe, whose country lay N. of the Helvetii.
**lātūrus, -a, -um,** *fut. partic. of* **fero.**
**lātus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Broad; wide.
**lătus, -ĕris,** *n.* (1) Side. (2) Flank (of an army).
**laus, laudis,** *f.* Glory.
**lēgātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* (1) Embassy; deputation. (2) The persons composing an embassy; the ambassadors.
**lēgātus, -i,** *m.* (1) An ambassador. (2) A legate. See Intr. § 50.
**lĕgĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* A legion; brigade. See Intr. § 41.
**lĕgĭōnārĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Legionary; belonging to a legion.
**Lĕmannus, -i,** *m.* (usually w. *lacus*). The Lake of Geneva.
**lēnĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Slowness; sluggishness of current.
**Leuci, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe of Gallia Celtica, living along the Upper Moselle.
**lex, lēgis,** *f.* A law; formal enactment.
**lĭbenter,** *adv.* Readily; willingly.
**līber, -ĕra, -ĕrum,** *adj.* Free; undisturbed.
**lībĕrālĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Generosity.
**lībĕrē,** *adv.* Comp. **līberius.** Freely; unreservedly.
**līberi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* Children (w. reference to their parents).
**lībertas, -ātis,** *f.* Freedom; independence.
**lĭcĕor, lĭcĭtus sum,** 2, *v. dep.* Pres. part. **licens.** To bid (at a sale); to make a bid.
**lĭcet,** *v. impers.* It is allowed; permitted.
**Lingŏnes, -um,** *m. pl.* Acc. **Lingŏnas.** A Celtic tribe in Gallia Celtica, living N. of the Sequani, and W. of the Vosges.
**lingua, -ae,** *f.* (1) A tongue. (2) A language.
**linter, -tris,** *f.* A small boat; wherry.
**Liscus, -i,** *m.* Liscus, the vergobret, or chief magistrate of the Aedui.
**littĕra, ae,** *f.* A letter (of the alphabet); character. (2) (*pl. only*) A letter (epistle).
**lŏcus, -i,** *m.* (*pl.* **lŏca, -ōrum,** *n.*). (1) Spot; place. (2) Country; district; locality. (3) Place; position; rank. (4) Regard. (5) (*pl.* Region; country. (6) **In loco alicuius.** In place of; as. (7) Room.
**lŏcūtus, -a, -um,** *perf. part.* of **loquor.**
**longē,** *adv.* Superl. **longissime.** (1) Far. (2) By far (w. superlatives).
**longinquus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Long; long-continued.
**longĭtūdo, -ĭnis,** *f.* Length.
**longus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **longĭor, -ĭus**). (1) Long. (2) Distant; remote (of time).
**lŏquor, lŏcūtus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) To speak (with, **cum aliquo**). (2) **Loqui pro aliquo.** To be spokesman for.
**Lūcĭus, -ĭi,** *m.* A Roman praenomen.
**lūna, -ae,** *f.* The moon.
**lux, lūcis,** *f.* (1) Light; daylight. (2) **Prima lux.** Dawn; daybreak.

**M.** Abbr. for Marcus.
**măgis,** *adv. comp.* More; rather.
**măgistrātus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) A magistracy. (2) A magistrate.

**magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis,** *f.* Size; stature.
**magnŏpĕrē,** *adv.* Comp. **magis**; superl. **maxime.** Greatly; exceedingly. (For *magno opere*, 'with great labour,' often so written in two words. It is used as the adv. of *magnus.*)
**magnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **maior, -us**; superl. **maximus, -a, um.** (1) Great. (2) Forced (*itinera*). (3) **Maiores, -um,** *pl.* (as subst.). Ancestors.
**mălĕ,** *adv.* Badly; amiss.
**mălĕfĭcĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Harm; injury; mischief.
**mălus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **peior, -us.** Bad.
**mandātum, -i,** *n.* Instructions; order; injunction.
**mando, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To commission; charge to do something (**alicui ut** and **subj.**). (2) To commit; entrust: **se fugae mandare.** See Vocab. **fuga.** (3) Passive used impersonally.
**mănĕo, mansi, mansum,** 2, *v. n.* (1) To remain; abide. (2) To adhere to; abide by (**in** and abl.).
**mănus, -ūs,** *f.* (1) A hand. (2) **Manu emittere,** to throw away. (3) A band; body.
**Marcŏmăni, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (men of the Mark or border). A powerful German tribe, which joined Ariovistus.
**Marcus, -i,** *m.* Marcus, a Roman praenomen. (See Vocab. **Caesar.**)
**Mārĭus, -ĭi,** *m.* Gaius Marius (157–86 B.C.), a great Roman soldier, who conquered Jugurtha, the Teutons and Cimbri. He was the leader of the Populares or Democratic Party and Sulla's great opponent; seven times consul. Caesar's uncle.
**matăra, -ae,** *f.* A (Celtic) javelin.
**māter, -tris,** *f.* (1) A mother. (2) **Ex matre,** on the mother's side.
**māterfămĭlĭae, matrisfamiliae,** *f.* A matron.
**mātrĭmōnĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Marriage. (2) **Dare in matrimonium.** To bestow in marriage (of the father giving his daughter). (3) **In matrimonium ducere.** To marry (of the husband).
**Matrōna, -ae,** *f.* The river Marne.
**mātūrē,** *adv.* Comp. **mātūrĭus**; Superl. **mātūrrĭmē.** Early; speedily.
**mātūro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To hasten; make haste (the object is often an infinitive).
**mātūrus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Ripe.
**maxĭmē,** *adv. superl.* (see Vocab. **magnopere**). In the highest degree; exceedingly; very.
**maxĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj. superl.* of **magnus** (*q. v.*). Greatest.
**Maxĭmus, -i,** *m.* A Roman family name. See Vocab. **Fabius.**
**mĕdĭocrĭter,** *adv.* (1) Moderately; in an ordinary degree. (2) **Non mediocriter**; in no ordinary degree.
**mĕdĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Middle. (2) Half-way between (*w. genitive*). (3) **In colle medio.** Half way up the hill.
**mĕmŏrĭa, -ae,** *f.* (1) Memory; recollection. (2) **Memoriâ tenere**; to remember. (3) **Memoriam alicuius rei deponere**; to forget.
**mens, mentis,** *f.* The mind; reason (the intellectual part of man).
**mensis, -is,** *m.* (*gen. pl.* **mensum**). A month.
**mercātor, -ōris,** *m.* A trader.
**merces, -ēdis,** *f.* Hire; pay.
**mĕrĕor, -ĭtus sum,** 2, *v. dep.* (1) To deserve; merit; win. (2) (**Ita-bene, male**) **mereri de aliquo**; to deserve (well, ill, &c.) at the hands of some one: *i.e.* to behave well or ill towards.
**mĕrĭdĭes, -ēi,** *m.* Noon.
**mĕrĭtum, -i,** *n.* A desert.
**Messalla, -ae,** *m.* The name of a Roman family (cognomen), esp. Marcus Valerius Messalla, who was consul in 61 B.C.
**mētĭor, mensus sum,** 4, *v. dep.* To measure out; serve; deal out (rations, &c.).
**Metĭus, -ĭi,** *m.* Marcus Metius, an officer of Caesar who, being a friend of Ariovistus, was selected to go on an embassy to the German king.
**mīlĕs, -ĭtis,** *c.* A soldier.
**mīlĭtāris, -e,** *adj.* (1) Military; of war. (2) **Res militaris.** See Vocab. **res.**
**mille.** (*a*) In sing. (i) *indecl. num.*

*adj.*; (ii) *indecl. subst.* (followed by genitive: **mille passuum**, 25, l. 15); (*b*) Pl. **mīlĭa** (*always* a substantive, and therefore usually followed by genitive). (1) One thousand; thousands of. (2) **Mille passuum**; one Roman mile.

**mĭnĭmē**, *adv. superl.* Very little; very rarely.

**mĭnĭmus, -a, -um**, *adj. superl.* of **parvus**. (1) Very little; least. (2) **Minimum** (used as adv.). Least. See Vocab. **posse.** (3) **Minimum** (used as neuter subst., and followed by partitive genitive). Very little of.

**mĭnor, -us**, *adj.* Compar. of **parvus.** (1) Less; lesser. (2) **Minus**, *n.* used as substantive.. Less of (followed by partitive gen.).

**mĭnŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum**, 3, *v. a.* To diminish, lessen, impair.

**mĭnus**, *adv. compar.* (1) Less. (2) Not at all.

**mīror, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To wonder (that, *quod* and indic.).

**mīrus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Wonderful. **mirum in modum**, wonderfully; surprisingly.

**mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum**, *adj.* Compar. **mĭsĕrĭor.** Pitiable; wretched.

**mĭsĕror, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To bewail; lament.

**mitto, mīsi, missum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To send. (2) To pass (**sub iugum**). (3) To hurl.

**mŏdŏ**, *adv.* Only. See Vocab. **non.**

**mŏdus, -i**, *m.* (1) Way; manner. (2) **Mirum in modum.** In a wonderful way; wonderfully.

**mōlīmentum, -i**, *n.* Effort; exertion.

**mŏlo, -ŭi, -ĭtum**, 3, *v. a.* To grind (corn).

**mŏnĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum**, 2, *v. a.* To advise; warn (*ut* and subj.).

**mons, montis**, *m.* A mountain.

**mŏrĭor, mortŭus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* To die.

**mŏror, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To delay.

**mors, mortis**, *f.* Death.

**mos, mōris**, *m.* Custom; practice.

**mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum**, 2, *v. a.* (1) To move. (2) **Castra movere.** See **castra.**

**mŭlĭer, -ĕris**, *f.* A woman.

**multĭtūdo, -ĭnis**, *f.* A multitude.

**multus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Much. (2) Many. (3) Long (*consuetudo*). (4) Well advanced (*dies*). (5) Far into the night (*multa nox*). (6) Fluently (w. *lingua* in 47, l. 15). (7) **Multi**, *m. pl.* Many men. (8) **Multa**, *n. pl.* Many things. (9) **Multo**, *abl. n. sing.* used adverbially. By far; far.

**mūnĭo, -īvi, -ītum**, 4, *v. a.* (1) To fortify. (2) To guard; defend; protect.

**mūnītĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* (1) Fortifying; the erection of fortifications. (2) Fortifications. (3) **Munitionem facere.** See Vocab. **facere.**

**mūnus, -ĕris**, *n.* A gift.

**mūrus, -i**, *m.* A wall.

**nactus, -a, -um**, *perf. part.* of **nanciscor.**

**nam**, *conj.* For. (Always the first word in the sentence. Cf. Vocab. **enim.**)

**Nammeius, -i**, *m.* An Helvetian noble, sent to request of Caesar a passage through the Roman Province.

**namque**, *conj.* For, indeed. (A strengthened form of *nam.*)

**nanciscor, nactus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* To get; obtain; meet with (generally not as the result of one's own exertions, but by accident.)

**Nasua, -ae**, *m.* A German chieftain, joint leader with Cimberius of the Suebi.

**nātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Tribe; people; nation.

**nātūra, -ae**, *f.* Nature; character.

**nāvĭcŭla, -ae**, *f.* A small boat; skiff.

**nāvis, -is**, *f.* A ship.

**nē**, *adv.* and *conj.* I. (*As adv.*) **nē . . . quĭdem** (with the emphatic word between the particles); not even. II. (*As conj.*) followed by the subjunctive. (1) That not; lest (to express negative purpose.) (2) From (with verbs of hindering and preventing). (3) Not; let . . . not (in prohibitions direct or indirect.) (4) (after verbs of fear). That.

**nec**, *conj.* See **neque**.
**nĕcessārĭus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Unavoidable; pressing; urgent. (2) Of need (*tempus*). (3) **Necessaria res.** See Vocab. **res.** (4) **Necessarius, -i**, *m.* (as subst.). A kinsman. **nĕcessārĭō**, *adv.* Of necessity, necessarily.
**nĕcessĭtūdo, -ĭnis**, *f.* Friendship; alliance.
**necnĕ**, *adv.* Or not (used in the second part of alternative questions; indirect).
**nĕco, -āvi, -ātum, 1**, *v. a.* (1) To put to death. (2) **igni necare.** To burn alive.
**neglĕgo, -exi, -ectum, 3**, *v. a.* To neglect; disregard; remain indifferent to.
**nĕgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1**, v. a. To deny that; say that . . . not (*acc.* and *inf.*).
**nĕgōtĭum, -ii**, *n.* A business; undertaking.
**Nĕmētes, -um**, *m. pl.* A German tribe living on the West bank of the Rhine, which joined Ariovistus.
**nēmo, nēmĭnis, nēmĭnem**, *c. pron.* No one; nobody. (The other cases are generally supplied from **nullus.**)
**nĕque**, or **nec**, *conj.* (1) And; not; nor. (2) **Neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, neither . . . nor
**nēquīquam**, *adv.* In vain; fruitlessly.
**nervus, -i**, *m.* (1) A sinew. (2) Strength; power.
**nēve**, or **neu**, *conj.* And not; nor (introducing an alternative purpose or prohibition).
**nex, nĕcis**, *f.* Death (especially by violence).
**nĭhil**, *n. indecl.* Nothing (often followed by partitive gen.).
**nĭhĭlum, -i**, *n.* (1) Nothing. (2) **Nĭhĭlō**, abl. of measure of difference, used with comparatives: *e.g.* the adverbial forms **nihilo minus, nihilo setius**, none the less, nevertheless.
**nĭsĭ**, *conj.* If not; unless.
**nītor, nīsus** or **nixus sum, 3**, *v. dep.* To rely upon (w. abl.)
**nōbĭlis, -e**, *adj.* Superl. **nōbĭlissĭmus, -a, -um.** Illustrious; of noble birth.
**nōbĭlĭtas, -ātis**, *f.* (1) Nobility. (2) The nobility; the nobles.
**noctū**, *adv.* By night; in the night time.
**nocturnus, -a, -um**, *adj.* By night.
**nōlo, nōlŭi, nolle**, *v. irreg.* To be unwilling; not to want.
**nōmen, -ĭnis**, *n.* (1) Name. (2) Renown; reputation. (3) Account.
**nōmĭnātim**, *adv.* Giving the names, *i.e.* in detail; detailed.
**nōn**, *adv.* (1) Not. (2) **non modo . . . sed . . .**: not only . . . but . . .
**nōnāgintā**, *num. adj. indecl.* Ninety.
**nondum**, *adv.* Not yet.
**nonnullus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Several; some. (2) **Nonnulli, -orum**, *m.*: *sc. hostes.*
**nonnumquam**, *adv.* Sometimes.
**Norēĭa, -ae**, *f.* The capital of Noricum: now Neumarkt in Styria.
**Nōrĭcum, -i**, *n.* A county lying due north of the head of the Adriatic Sea, between the Danube and the Alps.
**Nōrĭcus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Belonging to Noricum; Norican. (2) **Ager Noricus.** See Vocab. **ager.** (3) **Nōrĭca, -ae**, *f.* (as subst.). A Norican woman.
**nōs**, *pers. pron.* 1st pers. pl. We.
**noster, -tra, -trum**, *possess. pron.* (1) Our. (2) Roman. See note on 1, l. 3. (3) **Nostri, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* (as subst.). Our men, *i.e.* the Roman soldiers.
**nŏvem**, *num. adj.* Nine.
**nŏvus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Superl. **nŏvissĭmus, -a, -um.** (1) New; fresh. (2) **Novae res.** See Vocab. **res.** (3) **Novissimus, -a, -um** Last; in the rear. (4) **Novissimum agmen.** The rear guard; the rear. See Vocab. **agmen**, and Intr. § 49. (5) **Novissimi, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* (as subst.). The rear men; the rear.
**nox, noctis**, *f.* Night.
**nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3**, *v. a.* To marry (**alicui**, of the bride).
**nūdus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Bare; unprotected.

**nullus, -a, -um,** *adj.* No; not any; none.

**num,** *adv.* A particle used in questions expecting the answer No. To translate it throw the sentence into the form of a question, or use 'whether.'

**nŭmĕrus, -i,** *m.* A number.

**numquam,** *adv.* Never.

**nunc,** *adv.* Now; at the present time.

**nuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To bring news or intelligence about; report. (2) **Nuntiatum est.** News was brought (passive used impersonally).

**nuntĭus, -ĭi,** *m.* (1) A messenger. (2) A message; news.

**nūper,** *adv.* Lately; recently.

**nuptum,** *supine in -um* of **nubo** (*q.v.*).

**nūtus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) A nod. (2) Command; good will and pleasure.

**ŏb,** *prep. w. acc.* On account of.

**ŏbaerātus, -i,** *m.* A debtor; one whom debt has reduced to a state of dependence.

**ōbĭcĭo, obiēci, obiectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To oppose; throw up a defence. (2) To expose to (**alicui rei**).

**oblīviscor, -lītus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To forget (**alicuius rei**).

**obsēcro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To implore; entreat (**aliquem ne aliquid faciat**).

**observo, -āvi, -ātum, 1,** *v. a.* To respect; keep; observe.

**obses, -ĭdis,** *c.* A hostage.

**obsigno, -āvi, -ātum, 1,** *v. a.* To sign and seal (wills, &c.).

**obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To bind (e.g. **iureiurando**). (2) To lay under an obligation.

**obtĭnĕo, -tĭnŭi, -tentum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To hold; occupy; possess (e.g. *regnum*, *principatum*, *imperium*). (2) To seize; acquire. (3) To administer (a province, &c.). (For the meaning of *obtinere* cf. note on 1, l. 16).

**occāsus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) A going down; setting (of the sun, *e.g*). (2) **Occāsus sōlis**; the West.

**occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To kill; slay. (2) **Occīsi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (part. used as subst.). The slain.

**occulto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To hide; conceal.

**occultus, -a, -um** (*perf. part. pass.* of **occulo**, to hide). (1) Hidden; secret. (2) **In occulto**; secretly; in private.

**occŭpo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To seize; usurp. (2) Hold; occupy.

**occurro, -curri, -cursum,** 3, *v. n.* To counteract; meet; face (w. dat.).

**Ōcĕănus, -i,** *m.* The Ocean—*i.e.* the Atlantic.

**Ōcĕlum, -i,** *n.* The town of the Graioceli, the most westerly place of Gallia Citerior, situated among the Graian Alps.

**octō,** *num. adj. indecl.* Eight.

**octōdĕcim,** *num. adj.* Eighteen.

**octōginta,** *num. adj. indecl.* Eighty.

**ŏcŭlus, -i,** *m.* An eye.

**ōdi, ōdisse.** Defective verb with perfect stem only. To hate.

**offendo, -di, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* To displease; mortify; hurt one's feelings (**alicuius animum**).

**offensĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Offence; displeasing (**animi**).

**offĭcĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) A service. (2) Duty; sense of duty.

**omnīno,** *adv.* In all; altogether. (2) At all.

**omnis, -e,** *adj.* (1) Every; all. (2) The whole of. (3) All (in plural). (4) **Omnes, -ĭum,** *c. pl.* (as subst.). All men. (5) **Omnĭa, -ĭum,** *n. pl.* (as subst.). All things.

**ŏpes, -um,** *f. pl.* (1) Resources. (2) Power; influence.

**ŏportet, -ŭit,** 2, *v. impers.* It is necessary; must; bound to (w. inf.).

**oppĭdum, -i,** *n.* A walled town; town.

**opportūnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **opportūnissĭmus, -a, -um.** Convenient; suitable.

**opprĭmo, -pressi, -pressum,** 3, *v. a.* To overthrow; crush; subdue.

**oppugno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To attack; besiege.

**optĭmē,** *adv.* Superl. of **bene.** Very well; excellently well.

**optĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. of **bonus.** Best.

**ŏpus, ĕris,** *n.* (1) Work. (2) Defence works; fortification.

**ŏpus,** *n.* (only nom. and accus.) (1) Need; necessity. (2) **Opus est mihi, Caesari,** &c. I want: Caesar wants, &c. (3) **Opus est aliqua re.** There is need of something: *see note on* 42, l. 21.

**ōrātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* (1) Talk; language. (2) A speech. (3) **Orationem habere.** See Vocab. **habeo.**

**ordo, -ĭnis,** *m.* (1) A line (of soldiers, &c.) (2) A 'century' in the army. See Intr. § 46, and note on 40, l. 2.

**Orgĕtŏrix, -īgis,** *m.* An Helvetian noble, who conspired to make himself king in 61 B.C.

**ŏrĭor, ortus sum, ŏrīri,** 4, *v. dep.* (1) To begin; arise; originate (the source from: **a** and *abl.*). (2) **Orĭens,** *pres. part.* Rising; hence **oriens sol,** the East.

**ornāmentum, -i,** *n.* Ornament; distinction.

**ōro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To entreat; beg.

**ostendo, -di, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To show. (2) To declare; give to understand.

**P.** Abbr. for Publius.

**pābŭlātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Collecting fodder; foraging.

**pābŭlum, -i,** *n.* Fodder.

**pāco, -āvi, -atum,** 1, *v. a.* To pacify, *i.e.* to reduce to subjection.

**paene,** *adv.* Almost.

**pāgus, -i,** *m.* (1) A district or canton (a division found among Celtic and German tribes). (2) The inhabitants of such a canton.

**pălam,** *adv.* Openly.

**pălus, -ūdis,** *f.* A morass; swamp.

**pando, pandi, passum,** 3, *v. a.* To spread or stretch out.

**pār, păris,** *adj.* Equal; a match for (i. with dat.; ii. with correlative clause introduced by **atque**).

**pārĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. n.* To obey. (Object, if expressed, in the dative.)

**păro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To make ready; prepare; provide. (2) **Pārātus, -a, -um** (*perf. part. pass.*); Comp., **paratior**; superl., **paratissimus.** Ready (to do something; **aliquid facere**).

**pars, partis,** *f.* (1) Part. (2) Degree; measure; extent. (3) **Magna ex parte.** To a great extent. (4) Side; direction.

**parvus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Comp. **mĭnor, -us**; superl. **mĭnĭmus, -a, -um.** Small.

**passus, -ūs,** *m.* A pace. See Vocab. **mille.**

**pătĕo, -ŭi,** 2, *v. n.* (1) To lie open. (2) To extend.

**păter, -tris,** *m.* (1) A father. (2) (*Pl.*). Forefathers.

**pătĭor, passus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) To suffer; endure. (2) To suffer; allow; permit.

**paucus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Few. (2) **Pauci, -ōrum,** *m.* (as subst.). A few men. (3) **Pauca, -ōrum,** *n.* (as subst.). A few things (words).

**paulātim,** *adv.* Gradually; little by little.

**paulus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Little. (2) **Paulo,** *adv.* A little; somewhat. (3) **Paulum,** *adv.* A little distance.

**pax, pācis,** *f.* Peace.

**pecco, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To do wrong.

**pĕdes, -ĭtis,** *m.* (1) A foot soldier. (2) **Pedites.** Infantry.

**pēior, -us,** *adj. comp. of* **malus.** Worse.

**pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To drive away. (2) To rout; defeat.

**pendo, pĕpendi, pensum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To weigh out: hence (2) to pay (money, penalties, &c.).

**per,** *prep. w. acc.* (1) Through (of space). (2) Through, by means of (of agency). (3) As concerns: *e.g.*, **per se,** so far as he was concerned.

**percontātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Question; inquiry.

**perdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To carry to; build as far as.

**pĕrĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum,** *v. n.* To perish; lose one's life.

**perfăcĭlis, -e,** *adj.* Very easy.

**perfĕro, -tŭli, -lātum, -ferre,** *v. a.* To submit to; endure; brook.

**perfĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To carry out; execute. (2) Finish

complete. (3) To cause, bring it about (that, *ut* and subj.).
**perfringo, -frēgi, -fractum,** 3, *v. a.* To break through.
**perfŭga, -ae,** *m.* A deserter.
**perfŭgĭo, -fūgi,** 3, *v. n.* To take refuge with; desert to (**ad aliquem**).
**pĕrīcŭlōsus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Dangerous; fraught with peril.
**pĕrīcŭlum, -i,** *n.* (1) Trial. (2) **Periculum facere alicuius.** To make trial of—*i.e.* measure one's strength against someone. (3) Danger.
**pĕrītus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. **pēritissĭmus.** Skilled; expert; experienced.
**permănĕo, -mansi, -mansum,** 2, *v. n.* To remain.
**permitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* To allow; permit (**alicui ut** and subj.).
**permŏvĕo, -mōvi, -mōtum,** 2, *v. a.* To induce; influence; prevail on.
**pernĭcĭes, -ēi,** *f.* Ruin; destruction.
**perpaucus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Very few.
**perpĕtŭō,** *adv.* Continually; permanently; for ever.
**perpĕtŭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Lasting; permanent; abiding. (2) Entire (*vita*).
**perrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,** 3, *v. a.* To break through; force one's way through.
**persĕquor, -sĕcūtus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To pursue; proceed against.
**persĕvēro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To persevere; persist in (*inf*).
**persolvo, -solvi, -sŏlūtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To pay; pay to the full. (2) **Poenas persolvere.** To suffer punishment.
**perspĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To prove; ascertain. (2) To perceive; realise.
**persuādĕo, -si, -sum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To convince (**alicui,** and acc. and inf.). (2) Often in the passive impersonally in meaning 1. (3) To persuade; induce (**alicui** and **ut** and subj.).
**perterrĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** *v. a.* To alarm; strike with panic.
**pertĭnācĭa, -ae,** *f.* Obstinacy.
**pertĭnĕo, -ŭi,** 2, *v. n.* (1) To extend to (**ad** and acc.). (2) To have a tendency to; tend to (**ad** and acc. of gerundive, or an equivalent, **eodem**) [*q.v.*].
**perturbo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) Disturb; discompose. (2) Throw into a panic.
**pervĕnĭo, -vēni, -ventum,** 4, *v. n.* (1) To reach a place; arrive at (**in** and acc.). (2) To come to (**ad** and acc.).
**pēs, pĕdis,** *m.* (1) A foot (the member). (2) **Ad pedes alicui se proicere.** To fall at one's feet (like a suppliant). (3) **Pedem referre.** To give way. (4) A foot (as measure of length).
**pĕto, -īvi** and **-ĭi, -ītum,** 3 *v. a.* (1) To seek. (2) To beg; request (that, **ut** and subj.). (3) To beg for.
**phălanx, -angis,** *f.* A phalanx. (See Intr. § 39.)
**pīlum, -ī,** *n.* The heavy javelin of the Roman legionary. (See Intr. § 58.)
**Pīso, -ōnis,** *m.* A Roman name (cognomen, being the name of a family in the Calpurnian *gens*). (1) **Lucius Piso,** who served as *legatus* under the consul L. Cassius Longinus against the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and was killed. (2) **Lucius Piso,** grandson of the above; Caesar married his daughter Calpurnia in 59 B.C. (3) **Marcus Pupius Piso,** who was consul in 61 B.C.
**plăcĕt, plăcŭit,** *v. impers.* It seems good to (**alicui**), *i.e.* he determines to (**ut** and subj.).
**plānĭtĭes, -ēi,** *f.* A plain.
**plebs, plēbis,** *f.* The mass of the people; the populace.
**plērumque,** *adv.* Mostly; for the most part.
**plūrĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. of **multus.** (1) Most; very much. (2) **Quam plurimas.** See Vocab. **quam.** (3) **Plūrĭmum,** *adv.* Most; very much.
**plūs, plūris,** *adj.* Compar. of **multus.** (1) More. (2) **Plūres, -ium.** A number of; several. (3) **Plus,** *n.* (as subst. w. partitive gen.). More of. (4) **Plus,** *adv. comp.* more.
**poena, -ae,** *f.* (1) Penalty; satis-

faction; vengeance. (2) **Poenas dare**. See Vocab. **do**. (3) **Poenas pendere**. See Vocab. **pendo**. (4) **Poenas persolvere**. See Vocab. **persolvo**. (5) **Poenas repetere**. See Vocab. **repeto**.
**pollĭcĕor, -ĭtus sum**, 2, *v. dep.* (1) To promise (something, **aliquid**). (2) To promise (to do something, future inf.).
**pōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To place; put. (2) (pass.). To be placed; lie. (3) To set; assign. (4) To pitch. See Vocab. **castra**.
**pons, pontis**, *m.* A bridge.
**pŏposci**, *perf. ind. of* **posco**.
**pŏpŭlātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Ravaging; devastation.
**pŏpŭlor, -ātus sum**, 1, *v. dep.* To lay waste; devastate.
**pŏpŭlus, -i**, *m.* The people.
**porto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To bear; carry; convey.
**portōrĭum, -ĭi**, *n.* Duty paid on imports and exports; customs.
**posco, pŏposci**, 3, *v. a.* To demand.
**pŏsĭtus, -a, -um**, *perf. part. pass. of* **pōno**.
**possessĭo, -ōnis**. *f.* (1) Possession. (2) Property; esp. landed estates; domains.
**possīdĕo, -sēdi, -sessum**, 2, *v. a.* To hold; occupy.
**possum, potŭi, posse**, *v. n.* (1) Can; to be able. (2) To have (much, more, very much, &c.) power or influence. (In this absolute sense, qualified by adverbs such as *largiter*, *plus*, *plurimum*.)
**post**, *adv.* and *prep.* (1) (*adv.*). Afterwards. (2) (*prep. w. acc.*). After (of place or time).
**postĕā**, *adv.* Afterwards.
**postĕāquam**, *conj.* After that.
**postĕrus, -a, -um**, *adv.* Next.
**postquam**, *conj.* When; as soon as.
**postrīdĭe**, *adv.* (1) On the morrow; on the day after. (2) On the morrow of; on the day following (w. a genit.: e.g. *eius diei*).
**postŭlāta, -ōrum**, *n. pl.* Demands.
**postŭlo, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v.a.* To beg; request; demand (**aliquid**).
**pŏtens, -ntis**, *adj.* Superl. **pŏtentissĭmus, -a, -um**. Powerful; influential.
**pŏtentātus, -ūs** *m.* Supremacy; the hegemony.
**pŏtentĭa, -ae**, *f.* Influence.
**pŏtestas, -ātis**, *f.* (1) Power (over, **in** and acc.). (2) Opportunity. (3) **Pŏtestātem sui facere**. To give another an opportunity of getting within reach of one: *i.e.* to offer battle.
**pŏtĭor, -ītus sum**, 4, *v. dep.* To acquire; take possession of (w. abl. or gen.).
**pŏtĭus**, *adv.* Rather.
**praecăvĕo, -cāvi, -cautum**, 2, *v. n.* To guard against; take precautions to prevent (**ne** and subj.).
**praecēdo, -cessi, -cessum**, 3, *v. a.* To surpass; excel.
**praecĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To instruct; give orders. (2) **Praeceptum erat** (*pass.* used impersonally). Instructions had been given.
**praecĭpŭē**, *adv.* Especially; particularly.
**praedīco, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* (1) To report; declare (that, acc. and inf.). (2) To vaunt; boast (**de aliqua re**).
**praefectus, -i**, *m.* An officer. (See Intr. § 54.)
**praefĭcĭo, -fēci, -fectum**, 3, *v. a.* To place in command of (acc. of person appointed; dat. of his command).
**praemitto, -mīsi, -missum**, 3, *v. a.* To send on in advance.
**praemĭum, -ĭi**, *n.* Advantage; distinction; reward.
**praeopto, -āvi, -ātum**, 1, *v. a.* To prefer (inf.).
**praepōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum**, 3, *v. a.* To set in command or charge of (acc. of the person; dat. of his command).
**praescrībo, -scripsi, -scriptum**, 3, *v. a.* (1) To direct; prescribe (**alicui** and subst. clause). (2) To order; give directions (**de** and abl.).
**praescriptum, -i**, *n.* (1) Order; direction. (2) **Ad praescriptum**. According to order.
**praesens, -entis**, *adj.* (strictly *pres. part.* of **praesum**). (1) Present. (2) **In praesentia** (*sc.* **tempora**).

For the present; under present circumstances.
**praesertim**, *adv.* Especially.
**praesĭdĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Defence; protection. (2) A guard; garrison. (3) **Praesidium collocare.** To garrison.
**praesto, -stĭti, -ĭtum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To surpass; excel (somebody in some quality, **alicui aliqua virtute**). (2) **Praestat.** It is better; preferable (w. inf. clause as subject).
**praesum, -fŭi, -esse,** *v. n.* (with dative). (1) To preside over; be at the head of. (2) To command; lead.
**praeter**, *prep. w. acc.* (1) Past; in front of; by. (2) Except.
**praetĕrĕā**, *adv.* Moreover; besides.
**praetĕrita, -ōrum,** *n. pl.* The past; past conduct. (It is really the perf. part. of *praetereo* used as a substantive.)
**praeterquam**, *adv.* Except.
**praetor, -ōris,** *m.* A Praetor, a high Roman magistrate, whose primary duty was to administer justice, but who, like the consuls, sometimes commanded armies. (2) **Pro praetōre.** With a Praetor's rank and powers. See Intr. § 50.
**praetōrĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Attached to the general. For the Praetorian Cohort, **praetoria cohors,** see Intr. § 69.
**prĕmo, pressi, pressum,** 3, *v. a.* To press hard; overwhelm.
**prendo, prendi, prensum,** 3, *v. a.* To take hold of; grasp.
**prĕtĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Price.
**prex, prĕcis,** *f.* (most freq. in pl.). Prayer; entreaty.
**prīdĭē**, *adv.* On the day before (w. following genitive).
**prīmus, -a, -um,** *adj. superl.* (1) First; earliest. (2) **Prima lux.** Dawn. (3) **Prima nox.** Nightfall. (4) In the van; front (of an army. See Vocab. **agmen**, and Intr. § 49). (5) **In primis.** In particular; especially. (6) **Prīmō**, *adv.* At first. (7) **Primum**, *adv.* At first. (8) **Quam primum.** As soon as possible. (See Vocab. **quam**.)
**princeps, -cĭpis,** *adj.* (1) First; foremost. (2) (as subst. *m.*). Foremost man; leader; chief.
**princĭpātus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) Leading position; hegemony. (2) Chief place; chieftainship.
**pristĭnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Former.
**prĭus,** - *adv. compar.* (1) Before; sooner. (2) **Prius quam.** Before that; sooner than.
**prīvātim**, *adv.* In a private capacity; as private individuals.
**prīvātus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Private. (2) Isolated.
**prō**, *prep. w. abl.* (1) In front of; before. (2) For; on behalf of. (3) In the place of; ranking as (*e.g.* **pro praetore**). See Vocab. **praetor.** (4) In proportion to; according to.
**prŏbo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To demonstrate; prove; show.
**prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3, *v. n.* To advance.
**Procillus, -i,** *m.* C. Valerius Procillus, a Gaul, whose father, C. Valerius Caburus, had received the Roman citizenship from C. Valerius Flaccus. Caesar sent him on a confidential mission to Ariovistus.
**prōcurro, -cŭcurri** or **-curri, cursum,** 3, *v. n.* To run forwards.
**prōdĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum,** *v. n.* To advance.
**prōdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To hand down; perpetuate.
**prōdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To lead forth or out.
**proelĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Battle; combat; engagement. (2) **Proelium facere.** See Vocab. **facio.** (3) **Proelium committere.** See Vocab. **committo.**
**prŏfectĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* A setting out; start.
**prŏfĭciscor, -fectus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* To start; set out.
**prŏfŭgĭo, -fūgi,** 3, *v. n.* To run away; escape.
**prōgrĕdĭor, -gressus sum,** 3, *v. n.* To advance.
**prŏhĭbĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To hinder; impede; keep from (abl.). (2) To ward off; keep out of (a and **abl.**).
**prōĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To throw; cast down. (2) **Se**

proicere. To prostrate oneself; to fall. See Vocab. **pes.**

**prōmŏvēo, -mōvi, -mōtum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To move forward; advance. (2) **Castra promovere.** See Vocab. **castra.**

**prŏpe,** *adv.* and *prep.* (1) *Adv.* comp. **prŏpius** (*q. v.*). (2) *Prep. w. acc.* Near; hard by.

**prōpello, -pŭli, -pulsum,** 3, *v. a.* To drive before one; overthrow; rout.

**prŏpinquus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Near at hand; near. (2) (As subst.) **prŏpinquus, -i,** *m.* A relation; kinsman. (3) (As subst.) **prŏpinqua, -ae,** *f.* A female relation: kinswoman.

**prŏpĭus,** *adv.* Compar. of **prŏpĕ.** Nearer to (w. acc.).

**prōpōno, -pŏsŭi, -pŏsĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To point out; declare; explain (acc. and inf.).

**propter,** *prep. w. acc.* On account of.

**proptĕrĕā,** *adv.* (1) Therefore; on that account; for that reason. (It is often used to strengthen *quod*, because.)

**prōpulso, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To drive back; repulse.

**prospĭcĭo, -spexi, -spectum,** 3, *v. n.* To look out for; provide for (w. dat.)

**Prōvincĭa, -ae,** *f.* The Roman province in the S. of Gaul. See Vocab. **Gallia.**

**proxĭmus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. of **prope, propior.** (1) (Of place.) Nearest to (w. dat. or acc.) (2) Nearest; most direct (*iter*). (3) (Of time.) Next. (4) **Proxĭmē,** *adv.* Most recently.

**publĭcus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Public. (2) **res publica.** See Vocab. **res.** (3) **publĭcē,** *adv.* In the name of the State.

**Publĭus, ĭi,** *m.* A Roman name. (A praenomen. See Vocab. **Caesar.**)

**pŭdor, -ōris,** *m.* Shame.

**pŭer, -ĕri,** *m.* (1) A boy. (2) **Puĕri,** *m. pl.* Children. (Boys and girls; it is the general word. Cf. Vocab. **liberi.**)

**pugna, -ae,** *f.* A battle: combat.

**pugno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To fight. (2) **Pugnātum est** (pass. used impersonally). The battle was fought.

**pulsus, -a, -um,** *perf. part. pass.* of **pello.**

**purgo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To clear; justify.

**pŭto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To think.

**Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Pyrenaean. (2) **Pyrenaei montes.** The Pyrenees.

**Q.** Abbr. for Quintus.

**quā,** *adv.* Where.

**quā,** *abl. f. sing. of* **qui.**

**quadrāgīntā,** *num. adj. indecl.* forty.

**quadringenti, -ae, -a,** *num. adj.* Four hundred.

**quaero, -sīvi** or **-sĭi, -sītum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To seek. (2) To inquire; make inquiries (of a person, **a** or **ex aliquo**).

**quaestor, -ōris,** *m.* A quaestor; a Roman magistrate, who was a kind of Treasurer. In B.C. 58 there were 20 quaestors elected annually. Some remained at Rome; the rest attended the various Proconsuls &c. to the provinces and served as treasurers and paymasters, and sometimes performed purely military duties. The Quaestorship was the first step towards the Consulship, and no one was eligible before the age of 25.

**quālis, -e,** *adj.* Of what kind; what.

**quam,** *adv.* (1) In what manner; how; as. (2) **Quam maximum.** As great as possible. **Quam primum.** As soon as possible. (**Quam** used with a superlative, often with some part of **possum,** to indicate the highest degree.) (3) Than (after comparatives). (4) **Quam diu.** See Vocab. **diu.**

**quam ob rem,** *adv.* For which reason; wherefore. (Sometimes written **quamobrem**; it is often used at the beginning of sentences to mark a transition.)

**quantus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) How great. (2) How much. (3) **Quantum, -i,** *n.* (as subst. *w. partit. gen.*) How much of.

**quārē**, *adv.* Why; wherefore.
**quartus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Fourth.
**quattŭor**, *num. adj. indecl.* Four.
**quattŭordĕcim**, *num. adj. indecl.* Fourteen.
**quĕ**, *conj.* And. (**Quĕ** is an *enclitic*, *i.e.* it never stands alone, but *leans upon* another word, e.g. *suoque*, 3, l. 29).
**quĕmadmŏdum**, *adv.* In what manner; just as.
**quĕror, questus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* (1) To lament; bewail (**aliquid**). (2) To complain (that, **quod** and subj.)
**qui, quae, quod**, *rel. pron.* (1) Who; which; what. (The antecedent substantive or pronoun is generally expressed; sometimes it is omitted.) (2) **Qui et is** &c. at the beginning of a sentence, to connect it with the preceding one. See note on 1, l. 12). (3) As (used as correlative of **idem** [*q. v.*]). (4) In order to; to; because; (used with subjunctive to express purpose, cause, &c.). (5) **Quo** (neut. abl. sing.; answering to **eo**, with comparatives). The more . . . the more . . . (6) **Quo**. In order to (used with a comparative and a subjunctive to express purpose).
**qui, qua, quod**, *indef. adj.* Any. (Used after **si, ne, num.**)
**quicquam**, *n. sing.* of **quisquam** (*q. v.*).
**quicquid**, *n. sing.* of **quisquis** (*q. v.*)
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *rel. pron.* Whoever; whatever.
**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**, *indef. pron.* A certain . . . a certain person or thing. (**Quidam** is the most emphatic of all the Latin indefinite pronouns.)
**quĭdem**, *adv.* (1) Indeed; even. (2) **Ne . . . quidem**. See Vocab. **nē**.
**quīn**, *conj. w. subj.* (1) That. (After negative words of doubt: e.g. **non dubium; neque abest suspicio.**) (2) That not; from doing something (after verbs of refraining). See note on 47, l. 7. (3) **Quin etiam**; nay more; nay further (when a climax is reached).
**quindĕcim**, *num. adj. indecl.* Fifteen.
**quingenti, -ae, -a**, *num. adj.* Five hundred.
**quīni, -ae, -a**, *num. adj. distrib.* Five each; five.
**quinquāgintā**, *num. adj. indecl.* Fifty.
**quinque**, *num. adj. indecl.* Five.
**quintus, -a, -um**, *num. adj.* Fifth.
**Quintus, -i**, *m.* A Roman name. (A praenomen. See Vocab. **Caesar.**)
**quis, quid.** (As *subst.*) } *Interrog. pron.* (Used in direct and indirect questions.)
**qui, quae, quod.** (As *adj.* }
(1) Who; what. (2) **Quid**, *n. subst.* used with partitive gen., e.g. **quid sui consilii.**
**quis, quid**, *indef. pron.* Any. (**Quis** is used after **si, ne, num,** and is the least emphatic of the Latin indef. pronouns.)
**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam**, *indef. pron.* Anybody; anybody at all. (**Quisquam** is generally a substantive, and used after negatives or an equivalent.)
**quisque, quaeque, quodque**, *indef. pron.* (1) Each. (Of any number more than two.) (2) **Se, suus** are often used in connection with **quisque**, and immediately precede it. (3) **Nobilissimus quisque**. All the noblest. (**Quisque** is often thus used with a superlative, which always precedes, to express universality.)
**quisquis, quicquid**, *indef. rel. pron.* Whoever; whatever.
**quō**, *adv.* In order that; so that. (Used with a comparative and a subjunctive to express purpose.) See also Vocab. **qui.**
**quō mĭnus**, *conj.* That not; so as not to; from doing something (used with subj. after verbs of hindering and preventing, *e.g.* **recuso**).
**quod**, *conj.* (1) Because (often strengthened by the demonstrative **propterea**). (2) With regard to; as for. See note on 13, l. 14. (3) **Quod si**, but if (where **quod** always

alludes to something that precedes).

**quŏnĭam,** *conj.* Since; seeing that.

**quŏque,** *conj.* Also; too (following the emphatic word).

**quŏtannis,** *adv.* Every year.

**quŏtĭes,** *adv.* How often.

**rādix, -īcis,** *f.* (1) Root. (2) Foot; base (of a mountain, &c.).

**raeda, -ae,** *f.* A four-wheeled travelling carriage.

**răpīna, -ae,** *f.* (often in plural). Pillage; plundering.

**rătĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* (1) An account; reckoning. (2) Art; skilful calculation; stratagem. (3) Manner; condition: *e.g.* **alia rătĭone,** otherwise. (4) Reason; motive.

**rătis, -is,** *f.* A raft.

**Raurĭci, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A small Celtic people living near the Rhine N. of the Helvetii, not far from Bâle.

**rĕcens, -entis,** *adj.* Recent.

**rĕcĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To recover; get back. (2) To receive; admit. (3) **Se recipere** (i.) to retreat; (ii.) to betake oneself.

**rĕcūso, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To reject; refuse. (2) To decline; refuse (to do something, **quo minus** and **subj.**). (3) To object to; raise objections to (**de** and **abl.**)

**reddo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To give back; restore.

**rĕdĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum, -īre,** *v. n.* To return; go back.

**rĕdĭgo, -ēgi, -actum,** 3, *v. a.* To reduce (to any condition, **in** and **acc.**).

**rĕdĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum,** 3. *v. a.* (1) To purchase; procure (peace, gratitude, friendship, &c.). (2) To farm; contract for (taxes, &c.).

**rĕdintĕgro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To renew; restore.

**rĕdĭtĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* A return.

**rĕdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To lead or bring back.

**rĕfĕro, rettŭli, rĕlātum, rĕferre,** *v. a.* (1) To bring back. (2) **Pedem referre,** to take back; withdraw. (See Vocab. **pes**). (3) **Gratiam referre,** to render, return, thanks. (See Vocab. **gratia**). (4) To report.

**rĕgĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* (1) A district. (2) (frequently in pl.) Territories.

**regnum, -i,** *n.* (1) Royal or regal authority; kingship. (2) Kingdom.

**rēĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To throw back. (2) To repulse. (3) To throw away; discard.

**rĕlinquo, -līqui, -lictum,** 3, *v. a.* To leave; leave behind.

**rĕlĭquus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Left behind; remaining. (2) The rest; the remainder of. (3) **Rĕlĭqui, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (as subst.). The rest. (4) **Rĕlĭquum, -i,** *n.* (as subst.). What is left; remainder. (The word means those left after a number have been deducted. Contrast **ceteri.**)

**rĕmănĕo, -mansi,** 2, *v. n.* To remain behind.

**rĕmĭniscor,** 3, *v. dep.* To recollect; call to mind (**rei alicuius**).

**rĕmitto, -mīsi, -missum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To send back. (2) To give up; (3) relax; no longer enforce.

**rĕmŏvĕo, -mōvi, -mōtum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To withdraw; remove. (2) **Rĕmōtus, -a, -um.** Distant; remote from (perf. part. pass. used as adj.).

**rĕmūnĕror, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To recompense; reward.

**rēmus, -i,** *m.* An oar.

**rĕnuntĭo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To bring back word or news (to somebody, **alicui**; that, acc. and inf.) (2) **Rĕnuntiātum est.** News was brought back (pass. used impersonally).

**rĕpello, reppŭli, rĕpulsum,** 3, *v. a.* To drive back; repulse.

**rĕpentē,** *adv.* Suddenly.

**rĕpentīnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Sudden; unexpected.

**rĕpĕrĭo, reppĕri, rĕpertum,** 4, *v. a.* (1) To find. (2) To ascertain; discover (that, acc. and inf.).

**rĕpĕto, -pĕtīvi or -pĕtĭi, -pĕtītum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To ask back; demand the return of. (2) To exact; inflict due . . . (**poenas**).

**rĕpraesento, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To do a thing at once. (It is properly a commercial term, 'to pay ready money.')

**rĕprĕhendo, -di, -sum,** 3, *v. a.* To find fault with.

**rĕpŭdĭo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To reject; disdain.

**rĕpugno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To oppose; go against (**alicui rei**).

**rēs, rei,** *f.* (1) A thing; circumstance; matter; business; affair; undertaking. (2) **Rēs fămĭlĭāris.** Property; family possessions. (3) **Rēs publĭca.** The State; commonwealth. (4) **Res mĭlĭtāris.** War; the art of war. (5) **Nĕcessārĭa rēs.** Necessity. (6) **Res frūmentārĭa.** Corn supply. (7) **Nŏvae res,** *pl.* A revolution. (8) **Sĕcundae rēs,** *pl.* Prosperity: hence **sĕcundĭōres rēs,** greater prosperity.

**rēscindo, -scĭdi, -scissum,** 3, *v. a.* To break down.

**rēscisco, -scīvi** or **-scĭi, -scītum,** 4, *v. a.* To become aware of; learn.

**rēscrībo, -scripsi, -scriptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To re-enlist, *i.e.* transfer to another branch of the service (*e.g.* to the cavalry, **ad equum**). (2) **Ad equum rescribere.** To promote to the equites, *i.e.* the **ordo equestris.** See note on 42, l. 24.

**rĕservo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To reserve.

**rĕsisto, -stĭti,** 3, *v. n.* (1) To resist (**alicui**). (2) **Resisti posset.** Resistance could be offered (passive used impersonally).

**rēspondĕo, -di, -sum,** 2, *v. a.* To answer; return an answer (to a person, **alicui**: to a statement, **ad** and acc.: that, **acc.** and **inf.**).

**responsum, -i,** *n.* An answer.

**rēs publĭca.** See Vocab. **rēs.**

**rēspŭo, -ŭi,** 3, *v. a.* To reject.

**rēstĭtŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* To restore.

**rĕtĭnĕo, -tinŭi, -tentum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To keep back; detain. (2) Restrain (from doing something, **quin** and subj.).

**rĕvello, -velli, -vulsum,** 3, *v. a.* To pull or tear away; pull back.

**rĕvertor,** perf. **reverti,** 3, *v. n. dep.* (1) To return. (2) **Rĕvertĕrunt.** See note on 8, l. 10.

**rex, rēgis,** *m.* A king.

**Rhēnus, -i,** *m.* The river Rhine.

**Rhŏdănus, -i,** *m.* The river Rhône

**rīpa, -ae,** *f.* The bank of a river.

**rŏgo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To ask; request; beg (that, (i.) **ut** and subj.; (ii.) subj.).

**Rōma, -ae,** *f.* Rome.

**Rōmānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Roman; of Rome. (2) **Rōmāni, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (as subst). The Romans.

**rŏta, -ae,** *f.* A wheel.

**rursus,** *adv.* Again.

**Rŭteni, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe, living to the S. of the Arverni, partly in the Roman Province. They were conquered by Q. Fabius Maximus in 121 B.C.

**saepĕ,** *adv.* Compar. **saepĭus.** Often; frequently.

**saepĕnŭmĕrō,** *adv.* Again and again; oftentimes, repeatedly.

**sălūs, -ūtis,** *f.* Welfare; safety; deliverance.

**sancĭo, sanxi, sanctum,** 4, *v. a.* To bind; solemnly engage (not to do something, **ne** and subj.).

**sānĭtas, -ātis,** *f.* Right reason.

**Santŏni, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (gen. pl. **Santŏnum**). A people of Gallia Celtica, living on the sea coast N. of the mouth of the Garonne.

**sarcĭna, -ae,** *f.* A soldier's pack. See Intr. § 61.

**sătis,** *adj.* and *adv.* (1) Enough; sufficient (*adj.*). (2) Enough of; sufficient (w. partit. gen.). (3) Enough; sufficiently (as *adv.*). (4) Tolerably; pretty.

**sătisfăcio, -fēci, -factum,** 3, *v. n.* To make amends; apologise (to a person, for something: **alicui de aliqua re**).

**sătisfactĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Apology.

**scĕlus, -ĕris,** *n.* A crime.

**scĭentĭa, -ae,** *f.* Skill in; knowledge of (gen.).

**scĭo, -īvi, -ītum,** 4, *v. a.* To know.

**scūtum, -i,** *n.* A shield (of the kind carried by legionary soldiers. See Intr. § 56.

**se**, *reflexive pron.* Himself; herself; itself; themselves. Referring (i.) to the subject of its own clause; or (ii.) to the subject of the clause on which its own immediately depends; or (iii.) in Oratio Obliqua to the speaker. See Vocab. **quisque**, and note on 5, l. 9, for use of **se** with **quisque**.
**sēcrētō**, *adv.* In private; secretly.
**sēcum** (for **cum se**. See Vocab. **cum**).
**sĕcundum**, *prep. w. acc.* Next to; besides.
**sĕcundus, -a, -um**, *adj.* (1) Second: (2) Prosperous. (3) **Sĕcundĭores rēs**. See Vocab. **res**.
**sĕcus**, *adv.* Compar. **sētĭus**. (1) Otherwise. (2) **Nĭhĭlō sētĭus**. None the less.
**sĕcūtus, -a, -um**, *perf. part. of* **sequor** *q.v.*).
**sĕd**, *conj.* (1) But. (2) **Sĕd ĕtĭam**, but also—coupled with **non sōlum**.
**sēdĕcim**, *num. adj. indecl.* Sixteen.
**sēdes, -is**, *f.* Home; abode; dwelling-place.
**sēdĭtĭōsus, -a, -um**, *adj.* Seditious.
**Sedusii, -orum**, *m. pl.* A German tribe that joined Ariovistus.
**Sĕgūsĭāvi, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* A tribe of Gallia Celtica living west of the Rhône and Saône, and immediately south of the Aedui, whose dependents they were.
**sĕmĕl**, *adv.* (1) Once. (2) **Sĕmĕl atque ĭtĕrum**. Again and again; repeatedly.
**sēmentis, -is**, *f.* (1) A sowing. (2) **Sēmentes făcĕre**. See Vocab. **facere**.
**semper**, *adv.* Always.
**Sĕnātus, -ūs**, *m.* The Senate. (1) The Council of Elders which governed Rome. (2) The Council of Elders in the Celtic tribes of Gaul. (3) **Sĕnatūs consultum**. See Vocab. **consultum**.
**sĕnex, sĕnis**, *m.* An old man.
**sēni, -ae, -a**, *num. adj. distr.* Six each.
**sententĭa, -ae**, *f.* An opinion; view.
**sentĭo, -si, -sum**, 4, *v. a.* To perceive (that, acc. and inf.).
**sēpărātim**, *adv.* Separately
**septem**, *num. adj. indecl.* Seven.
**septentrĭōnes, -um**, *m. pl.* (1) The seven stars composing the constellation of the Wain. Hence (2) The North. (3) **septentrĭo, -ōnis**, *m.* The North (rarer in singular).
**septĭmus, -a, -um**, *num. adj.* Seventh.
**sĕpultūra, -ae**, *f.* Burial.
**Sēquăna, -ae**, *f.* The river Seine.
**Sēquăni, -ōrum**, *m. pl.* A powerful tribe of Gallia Celtica, bounded on the W., S. and E. by the Saône, Rhône, and Jura Mts. respectively. (2) **Sēquănus, -i**, *m.* A Sequanian.
**sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum**, 3, *v. dep.* To follow.
**servīlis, -e**, *adj.* (1) Servile; of slaves. (2) **Servilis tumultus**. See Vocab. **tumultus**.
**servĭtus, -ūtis**, *f.* Slavery.
**servus, -i**, *m.* A slave.
**sescenti, -ae, -a**, *num. adj.* Six hundred.
**sētĭus**, *adv.* See **secus**.
**seu**, *adv.* See **sive**.
**sex**, *num. adj. indecl.* Six.
**sexāginta**, *num. adj. indecl.* Sixty.
**sī**, *conj.* If.
**sĭbi**, *reflex. pron., dat. of* **se**.
**sīc**, *adv.* So; in such a manner.
**sīcŭt**, *adv.* Just so.
**signum, -i**, *n.* (1) A military standard. (2) **Signa ferre**. To resume the march (when camp is broken up). (3) **Signa inferre**. To advance to the attack; charge. (4) **Signa convertere**. To wheel round; face about.
**silva, -ae**, *f.* A wood.
**sĭmŭl**, *adv.* (1) At the same time. (2) **Sĭmŭl atque**. As soon as.
**sĭmŭlātĭo, -ōnis**, *f.* Pretence; pretended anxiety (about, *gen.*).
**sĭmŭlo, -āvi, -atum**, 1, *v. a.* To pretend; feign.
**sīn**, *conj.* But if (= **si-ne**, if not, in alternative hypotheses).
**sĭnĕ**, *prep. w. abl.* Without.
**singŭli, -ae, -a**, *num. adj. distr.* (1) One each. (2) One at a time; in single file.
**sĭnister, -tra, -trum**, *adj.* (1) On the left hand; (2) (As subst.) **sĭnistra, -ae**, *f.* The left hand

**sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu))** . . . *conj.* Whether . . . or.

**sŏcer, -ĕri,** *m.* A father-in-law.

**sŏcĭus, -ii,** *m.* An ally; confederate.

**sōl, sōlis,** *m.* The sun.

**sŏlum, -i,** *n.* The bare ground; soil.

**sōlus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Alone; (2) **Sōlum,** *adv.* Only.

**sŏror, -ōris,** *f.* A sister.

**sors, sortis,** *f.* A lot; *in pl.* the lot.

**spătĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Space; distance. (2) Period; interval (of time).

**spĕcĭes, -ēi,** *f.* Show.

**specto, -āvi, -atum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To have regard to; regard. (2) To lie; face; have an aspect (of geographical position).

**spĕcŭlor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To spy; act as spies.

**spēro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To hope.

**spēs, -ĕi,** *f.* Hope.

**pīrĭtus, -ūs,** *m.* Airs; arrogance (esp. in pl.).

**sponte,** *f.* Defective noun: only the abl. in common use. (1) **Mea, tua, sua,** &c. **sponte.** Of my, your, his own accord; spontaneously. (2) By one's own unaided action or initiative; unaided.

**stătim,** *adv.* On the spot; at once.

**stătŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To come to a decision; decide. (2) To decide (in legal sense); give verdict. (3) To resolve; make up one's mind (that, *inf.*). (4) To take measures (against, **in** and acc.).

**stīpendĭārĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Subject to tribute; tributary.

**stīpendĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Tribute.

**stŭdĕo, -ŭi,** 2, *v. n.* To be eager for (dat.).

**stŭdĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Zeal; enthusiasm. (2) Goodwill; attachment; devotion (towards, **in** and acc.).

**sŭb,** *prep. w. acc.* and *abl.* (1) w. acc. (motion to). Under; up to. (2) w. abl. (rest). Under; at the foot of.

**subdūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To lead up (a hill).

**sŭbĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum, -īre,** *v. n.* (1) To go under; enter. (2) Undergo; face (*pericula*).

**sūbĭcĭo, -iēci, -iectum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To discharge or cast from below.

**sŭbĭto,** *adv.* Suddenly; of a sudden.

**sublātus, -a, -um,** *perf. part. of* **tollo.**

**sublĕvo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) Support; raise up; lift up. (2) Support; assist; help; aid.

**submĭnistro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To furnish; supply.

**subsĭdĭum, ĭi,** *n.* (1) Reserve ranks; reserves. (2) Succour; assistance; relief.

**subsisto, -stĭti,** 3, *v. n.* To make a stand; resist.

**subsum, -esse,** *v. n.* To be near at hand.

**subtrăho, -traxi, -tractum.** To take away; withdraw.

**subvĕho, -vexi, -vectum,** 3, *v. a.* To bring; convey; transport up (a river).

**succēdo, -cessi, -cessum,** 3, *v. n.* To approach; advance to; march up to.

**Suēbi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (1) A powerful and warlike German people, or group of migratory tribes, a large body of which crossed the Rhine into Gaul and joined Ariovistus. (2) **Suēba, -ae,** *f.* A Suebian woman.

**Sulla, -ae,** *m.* (1) The name of a family in the Cornelian *gens.* (2) **L. Cornelius Sulla,** the great Roman Dictator and soldier. Died 78 B.C.

**sum, fŭi, esse,** *v. n.* (1) To be. (2) To belong to (w. possessive gen.).

**summa, -ae,** *f.* (1) The sum total: whole. (2) The general conduct.

**summŏvĕo, -mōvi, -mōtum,** 2, *v. a.* To repel; drive back.

**summus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Superl. of **superus.** (1) Highest; supreme; utmost. (2) The top of (**iugum, mons,** &c.). (3) Of the utmost importance.

**sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To take; assume. (2) To inflict (punishment, **supplicium de** and abl.).

**sumptus, -ūs,** *m.* Cost; expense.

**sŭperbē,** *adv.* Haughtily; arrogantly.

**sŭpĕrĭor, -us,** *adj.* (1) Upper; higher. (2) Former.

**sŭpēro, -āvi, -ātum,** *v. a.* and *n.* (1) (*a.*) To vanquish; overcome. (2) (*n.*) Win; gain the victory.
**sŭpersum, -fŭi, -esse.** (1) To be left (*e.g.* still unexpired, of time). (2) To survive.
**suppĕto, -īvi** or **-ĭi, -ītum,** 3, *v. n.* To be at hand; ready; stored up; procurable.
**supplĭcĭter,** *adv.* Humbly; in suppliant tones.
**supplĭcĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* (1) Punishment (esp. capital). (2) **Supplicium sumere.** See Vocab. **sumo.** (3) **Supplicio afficere.** To punish with death; put to death. See Vocab. **afficio.**
**supporto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To bring; convey up.
**sūprā,** *adv.* and *prep.* (1) (Adv.) before; previously. (2) (Prep. w. acc.) above.
**suscĭpĭo, -cēpi, -ceptum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) Undertake; assume. (2) (Rarely) with **sibi.**
**suspĭcĭo. -ōnis,** *f.* Suspicion. (See Vocab. **quin**).
**suspĭcor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To suspect (that, acc. and inf.).
**sustĭnĕo, -tĭnŭi, -tentum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To endure; tolerate. (2) To check. (3) To withstand.
**sŭus, -a, -um,** *poss. pron. reflex.* (1) His; her; its; their—own. (2) His; her; its; their. (3) **Sŭi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* (as subst.) his own men. (4) **Sŭa, -ōrum,** *n. pl.* (as subst.) his, their, &c., property. (5) **Sŭum, -i,** *n.* His, their, &c., property (not so common as the pl.). (See Vocab. **se** for note on the subject to which the Latin reflexive refers.)

**T.** Abbr. for Titus.
**tăbernācŭlum, -i,** *n.* A tent.
**tăbŭla, -ae,** *f.* (1) A writing-tablet. (2) (*Pl.*) a register; record.
**tăcĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. n.* and *a.* (1) (*n.*) To keep silence; be silent. (2) (*a.*) To be silent about; pass over in silence.
**tăcĭtus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Silent; speechless.
**tam,** *adv.* So.
**tamdĭū,** *adv.* So long.
**tămen,** *adv.* Yet; still (answering to some 'although' concessive clause).
**tămetsi,** *conj.* Although.
**tandem,** *adv.* At length; at last. (2) (In questions), pray; in the world.
**tantŏpĕre,** *adv.* So greatly; vehemently; bitterly.
**tantus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) So great. (2) **Tanti** (gen. of price). At so great a price; so highly valued.
**tectum, -i,** *n.* A roof: house; dwelling.
**tēlum, -i,** *n.* A missive; weapon; javelin.
**tĕmĕrārĭus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Hot-headed; hasty.
**tĕmĕrē,** *adv.* Hastily; rashly; heedlessly.
**tempĕrantĭa, -ae,** *f.* Moderation.
**tempĕro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* (1) To abstain; refrain (from, **ab** and abl.). (2) To refrain (from doing something, **sibi, quin** and subj.).
**tempto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To attempt; endeavour (*inf.*). (2) To try; make trial of.
**tempus, -ŏris,** *n.* (1) Time. (2) **Tempus anni.** Season.
**tĕnĕo, tĕnŭi, tentum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To hold; occupy. (2) **Mĕmorĭa tĕnēre.** See Vocab. **memoria.** (3) To bind; restrain.
**tĕr,** *adv.* Thrice; three times.
**tergum, -i,** *n.* (1) The back. (2) **Terga vertere.** To turn the back in flight; flee.
**terra, -ae,** *f.* (1) The ground. (2) Land: *e.g.* **terra Gallia,** the land of Gaul.
**terrēnus, -a -um,** *adj.* Of earth.
**tertĭus, -a, -um,** *num. adj.* Third.
**testāmentum, -i,** *n.* A will.
**testĭmōnĭum, -ĭi,** *n.* Evidence.
**testis, -is,** *c.* A witness.
**Teutŏni, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A people of Germany, who together with the Cimbri devastated Gaul &c. in 113 B.C. They defeated Roman armies in 109, 107, 105, B.C; but were finally crushed by Marius in 102 B.C., near Aquae Sextiae in S. Gaul.

**Tigŭrīnus, -i,** *m.* (1) The name of one of the four **pagi** or Cantons of the Helvetii. (2) **Tigŭrīni, -ōrum**; the inhabitants of the Tigurinus Pagus.

**tĭmĕo, -ŭi,** 2, *v. a.* and *n.* To fear (**ut,** that not).

**tĭmĭdus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Cowardly; fainthearted.

**tĭmor, -ōris,** *m.* fear; alarm; cowardice.

**Tĭtus, -i,** *m.* A Roman name (praenomen. See Vocab. **Caesar**).

**tŏlĕro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To support; sustain.

**tollo, sustŭli, sublātum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To take away; remove. (2) Abandon; give up. (3) Elate; embolden.

**Tōlōsātes, -ĭum,** *m. pl.* The people of Tolosa (Toulouse) in the Roman Province.

**tŏtĭdem,** *num. adj. indecl.* Just as many.

**tōtus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Entire; the whole of.

**trādo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,** 3, *v. a.* To surrender; hand over.

**trādūco, -duxi, -ductum,** 3, *v. a.* To lead, convey, across (w. double acc.).

**trăgŭla, -ae,** *f.* A javelin (of a kind thrown by means of an attached thong).

**trăho, traxi, tractum,** 3, *v. a.* To drag along.

**trāno, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To swim across.

**trans,** *prep. w. acc.* Across.

**transĕo, -īvi** or **-ĭi, -ĭtum, -īre,** *v. a.* To cross; pass.

**transfīgo, -fixi, -fixum,** 3, *v. a.* To pierce through.

**transporto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To bring across; transport.

**trĕcenti, -ae, -a,** *num. adj.* Three hundred.

**trēs, trĭa,** *num. adj.* Three.

**Trēvĭri, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A German tribe living in the N. of Gallia Celtica along the Moselle.

**Triboces, -um,** *m. pl.* A German tribe which joined Ariovistus. Their home was in the E. of Gallia Celtica, near the modern Strassburg.

**trĭbūnus, -i,** *m.* (1) A tribune. (2) **Trĭbūni mīlĭtum.** Military tribunes; the officers of the legion. See Intr. § 51.

**trĭbŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To ascribe; bestow. (2) To set great store by; make much of (dat. and with **magnopere,** or similar word).

**trīdŭum, -i,** *n.* Three days; a space of three days.

**trīginta,** *num. adj. indecl.* Thirty.

**trīni, -ae, -a,** *num. adj. distrib.* (1) Three each. (2) Triple; threefold (= **triplex**).

**triplex, -ĭcis,** *adj.* Triple; threefold.

**tristis, -e,** *adj.* Sad; mournful; dejected.

**tristĭtĭa, -ae,** *f.* Sadness; dejection.

**Troucillus, -i,** *m.* Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a prominent Gaul who lived in the Roman Province and was a friend of Caesar.

**Tulingi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A German tribe living N. of the Helvetii.

**tum,** *adv.* (1) Then. (2) **Tum demum.** Then and not till then; then at length.

**tŭmultus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) A sudden danger threatening the State. (2) **Servilis tumultus.** An insurrection of slaves. (See note on 40, l. 17.)

**tŭmŭlus, -i,** *m.* A mound; hill.

**turpis, -e,** *adj.* Superl. **turpissĭmus, -a, -um.** Shameful; disgraceful.

**ŭbĭ,** *adv.* (1) Where. (2) When; as soon as.

**Ubĭi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A German people living E. of the Rhine, near the modern Cologne. They sided with Caesar.

**ulciscor, ultus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) To take vengeance on; punish (**aliquem**). (2) To avenge (**aliquid**).

**ullus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (1) Any. (2) (As subst.) **ullus,** *m.* Anyone (usually after a negative).

**ulterĭor, -ĭus,** *adj. compar.* (1) Further. (2) **Gallia Ulterior.** See Vocab. **Gallia.**

**ultrā,** *prep. w. acc.* Past; beyond.

**ultro,** *adv.* (1) Beyond; on the further side. (2) Spontaneously; of

one's own accord. (3) **Ultro citroque.** To and fro.

**umquam,** *adv.* Ever; at any time.

**ūnā,** *adv.* At the same time; together (often used with **cum** and *abl.*)

**undĕ,** *adv.* Whence.

**undĭquĕ,** *adv.* (1) From all parts. (2) On all sides; in every direction.

**ūnus, -a, -um,** *num. adj.* (1) One; single. (2) **Unum,** *n.* One thing. (3) Alone. (For use in pl. see note on 32, l. 3).

**urbs, urbis,** *f.* (1) A city. (2) Rome—*the* city *par excellence.*

**usque,** *adv.* (1) Right; all the way. (2) **Usque ad.** Right up to; as far as.

**ūsus, -ūs,** *m.* (1) Use; experience; military experience. (2) Advantage. (3) **Ex usu.** To the advantage of; advantageous to. (4) **Usui esse.** To be serviceable; useful.

**ut,** *adv.* and *conj.* (1) As. (2) That; in order that. (3) So that. (4) When. (5) That not (after verbs of fear).

**ŭter, utra, utrum,** *pron. interrog.* (used in direct or indirect questions; pronoun or adjective). Which of two.

**ŭterque, utrăque, utrumque,** *pron.* Each of two; both. (Two regarded individually.)

**ŭti.** The same as **ut.**

**ūtor, ūsus sum,** 3, *v. dep.* (1) To employ; make use of; use (w. abl.). (2) To enjoy (peace, &c.). (3) To receive (**auxilio**). (4) To live under (**legibus**). (5) To display (**arrogantia**). (6) Speak (**lingua**).

**utrimque,** *adv.* On both sides.

**utrum,** *adv.* (introducing the first part of a double question; direct or indirect). (1) **Utrum . . . an.** Whether . . . or . . . (2) **Utrum . . . necne . . .** Whether . . . or no . . .

**uxor, -ōris,** *f.* A wife.

**văco, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. n.* To be unoccupied; uninhabited.

**vădum, -i,** *n.* (1) A ford. (2) **Vado transiri** (to be crossed by a ford). To be fordable.

**văgor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To roam; wander.

**vălĕo, -ŭi, -ĭtum,** 2, *v. n.* (1) To be strong. (2) Have power or influence.

**Vălĕrĭus, -i,** *m.* A Roman name (nomen. See Vocab. **Caesar.**)

**vallum, -i,** *n.* A rampart.

**Vangĭŏnes, -um,** *m. pl.* A German tribe living along the Rhine near the modern Worms. They joined Ariovistus.

**vasto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To ravage; devastate.

**vātĭcĭnātĭo, -ōnis,** *f.* Soothsaying; prediction.

**vĕ,** *conj.* Or. (The word is *enclitic*, *i.e.* it does not stand alone, but *leans* on another word.)

**vectīgal, -ālis,** *n.* A tax.

**vĕhĕmenter,** *adv.* Violently; vigorously.

**vĕl,** *conj.* (1) Or. (2) **Vĕl . . . vĕl . . .** Either . . . or.

**vēlox, -ōcis,** *adj.* Superl. **vēlōcissĭmus, -a, -um.** Swift.

**vĕlut,** *adv.* Just as (with **si**).

**vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum,** 4, *v. n.* (1) To come. (2) To come, fall, into some state (**in cruciatum,** *i.e.* to be subjected to; **in spem,** *i.e.* to conceive the hope, &c.). (3) **Ventum est.** They came (passive used impersonally).

**Verbigenus, -i.** The name of one of the four Pagi or Cantons of the Helvetii.

**verbum, -i,** *n.* A word.

**vĕrĕor, -ĭtus sum,** 2, *v. dep.* To fear (acc.; that, **ne** and subj.).

**vergo,** 3, *v. n.* To incline; slope; lie.

**vergŏbrĕtus, -i,** *m.* The vergobret. The chief magistrate of the Aeduans.

**vēro,** *conj.* But; indeed.

**versor, -ātus sum,** 1, *v. dep.* To be engaged in.

**verto, verti, versum,** 3, *v. a.* (1) To turn. (2) **Terga vertĕre,** to turn one's back in flight; take to flight.

**Verucloetĭus, -i,** *m.* An Helvetian noble sent on an embassy to Caesar.

**vērus, -a, -um,** *adj.* True.

**Vĕsontĭo, -ōnis,** *m.* Now Besançon, in Gallia Celtica, the capital of the Sequanians.

**vesper, -ĕris** and **-ĕri,** *m.* Acc. **vespĕrum.** Evening.

**vĕtĕrānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* Veteran (*i.e.* composed of veterans).

**vĕtus, -ĕris,** *adj.* (1) Ancient; that occurred long ago. (2) Of long standing; long-existing.

**vexo, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To harass; injure.

**vĭa, -ae,** *f.* (1) Way; route. (2) March; journey.

**victor, -ōris,** *m.* (1) A victor. (2) (as adj.) Victorious.

**victōrĭa, -ae,** *f.* Victory.

**victus, -ūs,** *m.* Life; manner of life.

**vīcus, -i,** *m.* A village.

**vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum,** 2, *v. a.* (1) To see. (2) (pass.) To seem. (3) **Visum est** (pass. used impersonally). It seemed.

**vĭgĭlĭa, -ae,** *f.* A watch. (See Intr. § 64.)

**vīginti,** *num. adj. indecl.* Twenty.

**vincĭo, vinxi, vinctum,** 4, *v. a.* To bind.

**vinclum, -i,** *n.* (1) (in pl.) Fetters; chains. (2) **Ex vinclis.** In chains. (See Vocab. **ex.**)

**vinco, vīci, victum,** 3, *v. a.* To conquer; overcome.

**virtūs, -ūtis,** *f.* (1) Manliness; bravery; valour. (2) Merits; good qualities.

**vīs,** *f.* (Acc. **vim,** abl. **vi,** and plur. **vīres** &c., only parts used.) (1) Force; violence. (2) **Per vim.** By force; forcibly. (3) **Vim facere.** To employ force; force one's way. (4) **Vires** (*pl.*). Strength.

**vīta, -ae,** *f.* Life.

**vīto, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To avoid.

**vix,** *adv.* Scarcely.

**Voccĭo, -ōnis,** *m.* A King of Noricum, whose sister married Ariovistus.

**vŏco, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* To call; summon.

**Vŏcontĭi, -ōrum,** *m. pl.* A Celtic people living in the East of the Roman Province, South of the Allobroges.

**vŏlo, vŏlŭi, velle,** *v. irreg.* (1) To wish; to be willing (to do something, *inf.*). (2) To want (something, **aliquid**). (3) To want something of somebody (**aliquem aliquid**).

**vŏluntas, -ātis,** *f.* (1) Free will. (2) Good will; permission.

**vŏluptas, -ātis,** *f.* Pleasure; joy.

**vox, vōcis,** *f.* (1) A word. (2) (pl.) Sayings; remarks; talk.

**vulgō,** *adv.* Everywhere; generally.

**vulgus, -ī,** *n.* The public; the multitude; the great mass.

**vulnĕro, -āvi, -ātum,** 1, *v. a.* (1) To wound. (2) To inflict wounds (absolutely).

**vulnus, -ĕris,** *n.* A wound.

**vultus, -ūs,** *m.* Look; countenance; aspect.

PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
LONDON